

# Anglo-Saxon Grammar and Exercise Book

with Inflections, Syntax, Selections for Reading, and Glossary

C. Alphonso Smith



Project Gutenberg

The Project Gutenberg EBook of Anglo-Saxon Grammar and Exercise Book, by  
C. Alphonso Smith

This eBook is for the use of anyone anywhere at no cost and with  
almost no restrictions whatsoever. You may copy it, give it away or  
re-use it under the terms of the Project Gutenberg License included  
with this eBook or online at [www.gutenberg.org](http://www.gutenberg.org)

Title: Anglo-Saxon Grammar and Exercise Book  
with Inflections, Syntax, Selections for Reading, and Glossary

Author: C. Alphonso Smith

Release Date: February 15, 2010 [EBook #31277]

Language: English

\*\*\* START OF THIS PROJECT GUTENBERG EBOOK ANGLO-SAXON GRAMMAR \*\*\*

Produced by Louise Hope, Barbara Tozier, Bill Tozier and  
the Online Distributed Proofreading Team at  
<https://www.pgdp.net>

This text includes characters that require UTF-8 (Unicode) file encoding:

Āā Ēē Īī Ōō Ūū; ȳ Ææ (vowels with macron or “long” mark)  
Ęę Ǫǫ (e and o with ogonek)

If any of these characters do not display properly—in particular, if the diacritic does not appear directly above the letter—or if the apostrophes and quotation marks in this paragraph appear as garbage, you may have an incompatible browser or unavailable fonts. First, make sure that the browser’s “character set” or “file encoding” is set to Unicode (UTF-8). You may also need to change your browser’s default font.

See the [Poetry](#) section for potential problems specific to that section.

In references to numbered Sections, “Note” may mean either an inset Note or a footnote. Links in this e-text lead to the beginning of the section.

In the prose reading selections (pages 99-121), the original line breaks have been preserved for use with the linenotes and Glossary. In the verse selections, line numbers in the notes have been replaced with the line numbers from the original texts, printed in brackets as shown. In both, annotated passages are linked to their Notes; these links are intended to be unobtrusive. The distinction between linenotes and numbered footnotes is in the original.

All brackets [ ] and asterisks \* are in the original, as are the < and > symbols.

[Contents](#)

Grammar and Exercises  
Reading Selections:  
*Prose, Poetry*  
Glossary

# ANGLO-SAXON GRAMMAR AND EXERCISE BOOK

WITH INFLECTIONS, SYNTAX, SELECTIONS  
FOR READING, AND GLOSSARY

BY

C. ALPHONSO SMITH, PH.D., LL.D.

LATE PROFESSOR OF ENGLISH IN THE  
UNITED STATES NAVAL ACADEMY



ALLYN AND BACON

BOSTON

NEW YORK

CHICAGO

ATLANTA

SAN FRANCISCO

---

COPYRIGHT, 1896, BY  
C. ALPHONSO SMITH.

IAI

Norwood Press  
J. S. Cushing & Co.—Berwick & Smith  
Norwood Mass. U.S.A.

---

## PREFACE.



THE scope of this book is indicated in § 5. It is intended for beginners, and in writing it, these words of Sir Thomas Elyot have not been forgotten: “Grammer, beinge but an introduction to the understandinge of autors, if it be made to longe or exquisite to the lerner, it in a maner mortifieth his corage: And by that time he cometh to the most swete and pleasant redinge of olde autors, the sparkes of fervent desire of lernynge are extincte with the burdone of grammer, lyke as a

lyttell fyre is sone quenched with a great heape of small stickes.”—*The Governour*, Cap. X.

Only the essentials, therefore, are treated in this work, which is planned more as a foundation for the study of Modern English grammar, of historical English grammar, and of the principles of English etymology, than as a general introduction to Germanic philology.

The Exercises in translation will, it is believed, furnish all the drill necessary to enable the student to retain the forms and constructions given in the various chapters.

The Selections for Reading relate to the history and literature of King Alfred's day, and are sufficient to give the student a first-hand, though brief, acquaintance with the native style and idiom of Early West Saxon prose in its golden age. Most of the words and constructions contained in them will be already familiar to the student through their intentional employment in the Exercises.

For the inflectional portion of this grammar, recourse has been had chiefly to Sievers' *Abriss der angelsächsischen Grammatik* (1895). Constant reference has been made also to the same author's earlier and larger *Angelsächsische Grammatik*, translated by Cook. A more sparing use has been made of Cosijn's *Altwestsächsische Grammatik*.

For syntax and illustrative sentences, Dr. J. E. Wülfiſg's *Syntax in den Werken Alfreds des Grossen, Part I.* (Bonn, 1894) has proved indispensable. Advance sheets of the second part of this great work lead one to believe that when completed the three parts will constitute the most important contribution to the study of English syntax that has yet been made. Old English sentences have also been cited from Sweet's *Anglo-Saxon Reader*, Bright's *Anglo-Saxon Reader*, and Cook's *First Book in Old English*.

The short chapter on the Order of Words has been condensed from my *Order of Words in Anglo-Saxon Prose* (Publications of the Modern Language Association of America, New Series, Vol. I, No. 2).

Though assuming sole responsibility for everything contained in this book, I take pleasure in acknowledging the kind and efficient assistance that has been so generously given me in its preparation. To none do I owe more than to Dr. J. E. Wülfiſg, of the University of Bonn; Prof. James A. Harrison, of the University

of Virginia; Prof. W. S. Currell, of Washington and Lee University; Prof. J. Douglas Bruce, of Bryn Mawr College; and Prof. L. M. Harris, of the University of Indiana. They have each rendered material aid, not only in the tedious task of detecting typographical errors in the proof-sheets, but by the valuable criticisms and suggestions which they have made as this work was passing through the press.

C. ALPHONSO SMITH.

LOUISIANA STATE UNIVERSITY,  
BATON ROUGE, September, 1896.

## PREFACE TO THE SECOND EDITION.



IN preparing this enlarged edition, a few minor errors in the first edition have been corrected and a few sentences added. The chief difference between the two editions, however, consists in the introduction of more reading matter and the consequent exposition of Old English meter. Both changes have been made at the persistent request of teachers and students of Old English.

Uniformity of treatment has been studiously preserved in the new material and the old, the emphasis in both being placed on syntax and upon the affinities that Old English shares with Modern English.

Many obligations have been incurred in preparing this augmented edition. I have again to thank Dr. J. E. Wülfing, Prof. James A. Harrison, Prof. W. S. Currell, and Prof. J. Douglas Bruce. To the scholarly criticisms also of Prof. J. M. Hart, of Cornell; Prof. Frank Jewett Mather, Jr., of Williams College; and Prof. Frederick Tupper, Jr., of the University of Vermont, I am indebted for aid as generously given as it is genuinely appreciated.

C. ALPHONSO SMITH.

August, 1898.

## PREFACE TO THE FOURTH EDITION

## PREFACE TO THE FOURTH EDITION.



AMONG those who have kindly aided in making this edition free from error, I wish to thank especially my friend Dr. John M. McBryde, Jr., of Hollins Institute, Virginia.

C. ALPHONSO SMITH.

UNIVERSITY OF NORTH CAROLINA,  
Chapel Hill, February, 1903.

## TABLE OF CONTENTS.



### PART I.—INTRODUCTION.

Chapters	Pages
I. History (§ 1-5)	1
II. Sounds (§ 6-11)	4
III. Inflections (§ 12-19)	10
IV. Order of Words (§ 20-21)	18
V. Practical Suggestions (§ 22-24)	21

### PART II.—ETYMOLOGY AND SYNTAX.

VI. The <b>a</b> -Declension: Masculine <b>a</b> -Stems (§ 25-30)	27
VII. Neuter <b>a</b> -Stems (§ 31-36)	30
VIII. The <b>ō</b> -Declension (§ 37-42)	33
IX. The <b>i</b> -Declension and the <b>u</b> -Declension (§ 43-55)	35
X. Present Indicative Endings of Strong Verbs (§ 56-62)	39
XI. The Weak or <b>n</b> -Declension (§ 63-66)	44
XII. Remnants of Other Consonant Declensions (§ 67-71)	47
XIII. Pronouns (§ 72-77)	50
XIV. Adjectives, Strong and Weak (§ 78-87)	53
XV. Numerals (§ 88-92)	57
XVI. Adverbs, Prepositions, and Conjunctions (§ 93-95)	60

XVII.	Comparison of Adjectives and Adverbs (§ 96-100)	64
XVIII.	Strong Verbs: Class I, Syntax of Moods (§ 101-108)	68
XIX.	Classes II and III (§ 109-113)	74
XX.	Classes IV, V, VI, and VII; Contract Verbs (§ 114-121)	78
XXI.	Weak Verbs (§ 122-133)	82
XXII.	Remaining Verbs; Verb Phrases with <b>habban</b> , <b>bēon</b> , and <b>weorðan</b> (§ 134-143)	90

PART III.—SELECTIONS FOR READING.

PROSE.

	Introductory	98
I.	The Battle of Ashdown	99
II.	A Prayer of King Alfred	101
III.	The Voyages of Ohthere and Wulfstan	102
	Ohthere's First Voyage	103
	Ohthere's Second Voyage	106
	Wulfstan's Voyage	107
IV.	The Story of Cædmon	111
V.	Alfred's Preface to the Pastoral Care	116

POETRY.

	Introductory	122
VI.	Extracts from Beowulf	136
VII.	The Wanderer	148

GLOSSARIES.

I.	Old English—Modern English	155
II.	Modern English—Old English	190



OLD ENGLISH  
GRAMMAR AND EXERCISES



OLD ENGLISH GRAMMAR AND  
EXERCISE BOOK.



# PART I.

—♦—

## INTRODUCTION.

—♦—

### CHAPTER I.

#### HISTORY.

#### 1.

The history of the English language falls naturally into three periods; but these periods blend into one another so gradually that too much significance must not be attached to the exact dates which scholars, chiefly for convenience of treatment, have assigned as their limits. Our language, it is true, has undergone many and great changes; but its continuity has never been broken, and its individuality has never been lost.

#### 2.

The first of these periods is that of OLD ENGLISH, or ANGLO-SAXON, <sup>1</sup> commonly known as the period of *full inflections*. *E.g.* **stān-as**, *stones*; **car-u**, *care*; **will-a**, *will*; **bind-an**, *to bind*; **help-aǥ** (= **ath**), *they help*.

It extends from the arrival of the English in Great Britain to about one hundred years after the Norman Conquest,—from A.D. 449 to 1150; but there are no literary remains of the earlier centuries of this period. There were four <sup>2</sup> distinct dialects spoken at this time. These were the Northumbrian, spoken north of the river Humber; the Mercian, spoken in the midland region between the Humber and the Thames; the West Saxon, spoken south and west of the Thames; and the Kentish, spoken in the neighborhood of Canterbury. Of these dialects, Modern English is most nearly akin to the Mercian; but the best known of them is the

West Saxon. It was in the West Saxon dialect that King Alfred (849-901) wrote and spoke. His writings belong to the period of Early West Saxon as distinguished from the period of Late West Saxon, the latter being best represented in the writings of Abbot Ælfric (955?-1025?).

### 3.

The second period is that of MIDDLE ENGLISH, or the period of *leveled inflections*, the dominant vowel of the inflections being **e**. *E.g.* **ston-es**, **car-e**, **will-e**, **bind-en** (or **bind-e**), **help-eth**, each being, as in the earlier period, a dissyllable.

The Middle English period extends from A.D. 1150 to 1500. Its greatest representatives are Chaucer (1340-1400) in poetry and Wiclif (1324-1384) in prose. There were three prominent dialects during this period: the Northern, corresponding to the older Northumbrian; the Midland (divided into East Midland and West Midland), corresponding to the Mercian; and the Southern, corresponding to the West Saxon and Kentish. London, situated in East Midland territory, had become the dominant speech center; and it was this East Midland dialect that both Chaucer and Wiclif employed.

NOTE.—It is a great mistake to think that Chaucer shaped our language from crude materials. His influence was conservative, not plastic. The popularity of his works tended to crystalize and thus to perpetuate the forms of the East Midland dialect, but that dialect was ready to his hand before he began to write. The speech of London was, in Chaucer's time, a mixture of Southern and Midland forms, but the Southern forms (survivals of the West Saxon dialect) had already begun to fall away; and this they continued to do, so that "Chaucer's language," as Dr. Murray says, "is more Southern than standard English eventually became." See also Morsbach, *Ueber den Ursprung der neuenglischen Schriftsprache* (1888).

### 4.

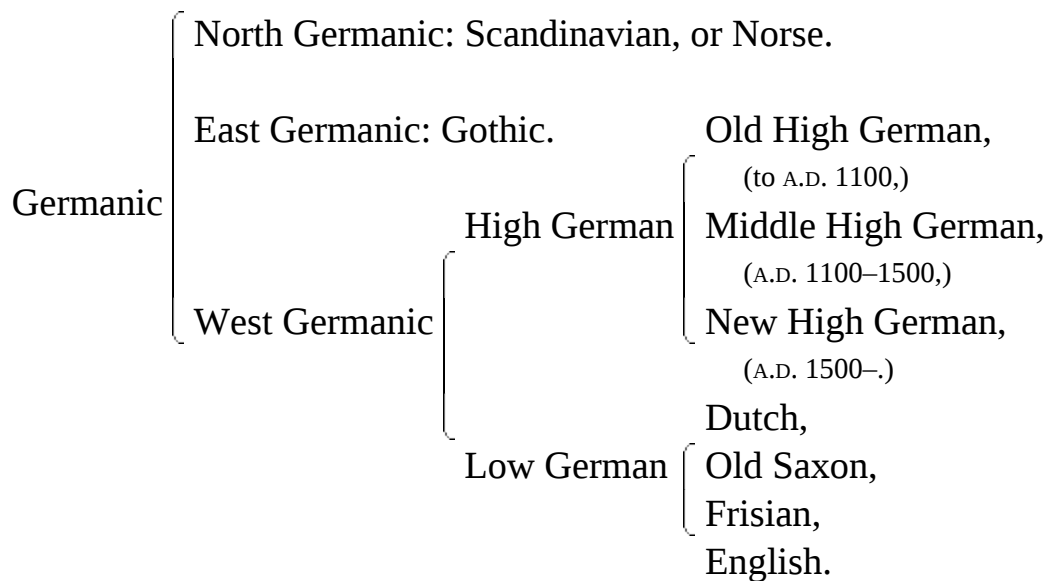
The last period is that of MODERN ENGLISH, or the period of *lost inflections*. *E.g.* **stones**, **care**, **will**, **bind**, **help**, each being a monosyllable. Modern English extends from A.D. 1500 to the present time. It has witnessed comparatively few grammatical changes, but the vocabulary of our language has been vastly increased by additions from the classical languages. Vowels, too, have shifted their values.

### 5.

It is the object of this book to give an elementary knowledge of Early West Saxon, that is, the language of King Alfred. With this knowledge, it will not be

difficult for the student to read Late West Saxon, or any other dialect of the Old English period. Such knowledge will also serve as the best introduction to the structure both of Middle English and of Modern English, besides laying a secure foundation for the scientific study of any other Germanic tongue.

NOTE.—The Germanic, or Teutonic, languages constitute a branch of the great Aryan, or Indo-Germanic (known also as the Indo-European) group. They are subdivided as follows:



1. This unfortunate nomenclature is due to the term *Angli Saxones*, which Latin writers used as a designation for the English Saxons as distinguished from the continental or Old Saxons. But Alfred and Ælfric both use the term *Englisc*, not Anglo-Saxon. The Angles spread over Northumbria and Mercia, far outnumbering the other tribes. Thus *Englisc* (= *Angel* + *isc*) became the general name for the language spoken.

2. As small as England is, there are six distinct dialects spoken in her borders to-day. Of these the Yorkshire dialect is, perhaps, the most peculiar. It preserves many Northumbrian survivals. See Tennyson's *Northern Farmer*.



## CHAPTER II.

## SOUNDS.

### Vowels and Diphthongs.

#### 6.

The long vowels and diphthongs will in this book be designated by the macron (–). Vowel length should in every case be associated by the student with each word learned: quantity alone sometimes distinguishes words meaning wholly different things: **fōr**, *he went*, **for**, *for*; **gōd**, *good*, **God**, *God*; **mān**, *crime*, **man**, *man*.

Long vowels and diphthongs:

**ā** as in father: **stān**, *a stone*.

**ǣ** as in man (prolonged): **slǣpan**, *to sleep*.

**ē** as in they: **hēr**, *here*.

**ī** as in machine: **mīn**, *mine*.

**ō** as in note (pure, not diphthongal): **bōc**, *book*.

**ū** as in rule: **tūn**, *town*.

**ȳ** as in German grün, or English green (with lips rounded): <sup>1</sup> **brȳd**, *bride*.

The diphthongs, long and short, have the stress upon the first vowel. The second vowel is obscured, and represents approximately the sound of *er* in *sooner*, *faster* (= *soon-uh*, *fast-uh*). The long diphthongs (**ǣ** is not a diphthong proper) are **ēo**, **īe**, and **ēa**. The sound of **ēo** is approximately reproduced in *mayor* (= *mā-uh*); that of **īe** in the dissyllabic pronunciation of *fear* (= *fē-uh*). But **ēa** = **ǣ-uh**. This diphthong is hardly to be distinguished from *ea* in *pear*, *bear*, etc., as pronounced in the southern section of the United States (= *bǣ-uh*, *pǣ-uh*).

#### 7.

The short sounds are nothing more than the long vowels and diphthongs shortened; but the student must at once rid himself of the idea that Modern English *red*, for example, is the shortened form of *reed*, or that *mat* is the shortened form of *mate*. Pronounce these long sounds with increasing rapidity, and *reed* will approach *rid*, while *mate* will approach *met*. The Old English short vowel sounds are:

**a** as in artistic: **habban**, *to have*.

**æ** as in mankind: **dæg**, *day*.

- e, ę** as in let: **stelan**, *to steal*, **seġtan**, *to set*.  
**i** as in sit: **hit**, *it*.  
**o** as in broad (but shorter): **God**, *God*.  
**ƿ** as in not: **lƿomb**, *lamb*.  
**u** as in full: **sunu**, *son*.  
**y** as in miller (with lips rounded) <sup>1</sup>: **gylden**, *golden*.

NOTE.—The symbol **ę** is known as *umlaut-e* (§ 58). It stands for Germanic *a*, while **e** (without the cedilla) represents Germanic *e*. The symbol **ƿ** is employed only before **m** and **n**. It, too, represents Germanic *a*. But Alfred writes **manig** or **monig**, *many*; **lamb** or **lomb**, *lamb*; **hand** or **hond**, *hand*, etc. The cedilla is an etymological sign added by modern grammarians.

The letters ę and ƿ were printed as shown in this e-text. The diacritic is not a cedilla (open to the left) but an ogonek (open to the right).

## Consonants.

### 8.

There is little difference between the values of Old English consonants and those of Modern English. The following distinctions, however, require notice:

The digraph **th** is represented in Old English texts by **ð** and **þ**, no consistent distinction being made between them. In the works of Alfred, **ð** (capital, **Ð**) is the more common: **ðās**, *those*; **ðæt**, *that*; **bindeð**, *he binds*.

The consonant **c** had the hard sound of *k*, the latter symbol being rare in West Saxon: **cyning**, *king*; **cwēn**, *queen*; **cūð**, *known*. When followed by a palatal vowel sound,—*e*, *i*, *æ*, *ea*, *eo*, long or short,—a vanishing *y* sound was doubtless interposed (*cf.* dialectic *k<sup>y</sup>ind* for *kind*). In Modern English the combination has passed into *ch*: **cealc**, *chalk*; **cīdan**, *to chide*; **lǣce**, *leech*; **cild**, *child*; **cēowan**, *to chew*. This change (*c* > *ch*) is known as Palatalization. The letter **g**, pronounced as in Modern English *gun*, has also a palatal value before the palatal vowels (*cf.* dialectic *g<sup>y</sup>irl* for *girl*).

The combination **cg**, which frequently stands for **gg**, had probably the sound of *dge* in Modern English *edge*: **ęcg**, *edge*; **seġgan**, *to say*; **brycg**, *bridge*. Initial **h** is sounded as in Modern English: **habban**, *to have*; **hālga**, *saint*. When closing a syllable it has the sound of German *ch*: **slōh**, *he slew*; **hēah**, *high*; **ðurh**, *through*.

### 9.

An important distinction is that between voiced (or sonant) and voiceless (or surd) consonants. <sup>2</sup> In Old English they are as follows:

VOICED.	VOICELESS.
<b>g</b>	<b>h, c</b>
<b>d</b>	<b>t</b>
<b>ð, þ</b> (as in <i>though</i> )	<b>θ, þ</b> (as in <i>thin</i> )
<b>b</b>	<b>p</b>
<b>f</b> (= v)	<b>f</b>
<b>s</b> (= z)	<b>s</b>

It is evident, therefore, that **ð** (**þ**), **f**, and **s** have double values in Old English. If voiced, they are equivalent to *th* (in *though*), *v*, and *z*. Otherwise, they are pronounced as *th* (in *thin*), *f* (in *fin*), and *s* (in *sin*). The syllabic environment will usually compel the student to give these letters their proper values. When occurring between vowels, they are always voiced: **ōðer**, *other*; **ofer**, *over*; **rīsan**, *to rise*.

NOTE.—The general rule in Old English, as in Modern English, is, that voiced consonants have a special affinity for other voiced consonants, and voiceless for voiceless. This is the law of Assimilation. Thus when *de* is added to form the preterit of a verb whose stem ends in a voiceless consonant, the **d** is unvoiced, or assimilated, to **t**: **settan**, *to set*, **sette** (but **trēddan**, *to tread*, has **trēdde**); **slæpan**, *to sleep*, **slæpte**; **drencan**, *to drench*, **drencete**; **cyssan**, *to kiss*, **cyste**. See § 126, Note 1.

## Syllables.

### 10.

A syllable is usually a vowel, either alone or in combination with consonants, uttered with a single impulse of stress; but certain consonants may form syllables: *oven* (= *ov-n*), *battle* (= *bæt-l*); (*cf.* also the vulgar pronunciation of *elm*).

A syllable may be (1) weak or strong, (2) open or closed, (3) long or short.

(1) A weak syllable receives a light stress. Its vowel sound is often different from that of the corresponding strong, or stressed, syllable. *Cf.* weak and strong *my* in “I want my *lárge* hat” and “I want *mý* hat.”

(2) An open syllable ends in a vowel or diphthong: **dē-man**, *to deem*; **ðū**, *thou*; **sca-can**, *to shake*; **dæ-ges**, *by day*. A closed syllable ends in one or more consonants: **ðing**, *thing*; **gōd**, *good*; **glæd**, *glad*.



(3) A syllable is long (*a*) if it contains a long vowel or a long diphthong: **drī-fan**, *to drive*; **lū-can**, *to lock*; **slǣ-pan**, *to sleep*; **cēo-san**, *to choose*; (*b*) if its vowel or diphthong is followed by more than one consonant: <sup>3</sup> **cræft**, *strength*; **heard**, *hard*; **lib-ban**, *to live*; **feal-lan**, *to fall*. Otherwise, the syllable is short: **ðe**, *which*; **be-ran**, *to bear*; **ðæt**, *that*; **gie-fan**, *to give*.

NOTE 1.—A single consonant belongs to the following syllable: **hā-lig**, *holy* (not **hāl-ig**); **wrī-tan**, *to write*; **fæ-der**, *father*.

NOTE 2.—The student will notice that the syllable may be long and the vowel short; but the vowel cannot be long and the syllable short.

NOTE 3.—Old English short vowels, occurring in open syllables, have regularly become long in Modern English: **we-fan**, *to weave*; **e-tan**, *to eat*; **ma-cian**, *to make*; **na-cod**, *naked*; **a-can**, *to ache*; **o-fer**, *over*. And Old English long vowels, preceding two or more consonants, have generally been shortened: **brēost**, *breast*; **hǣlð**, *health*; **slǣpte**, *slept*; **lǣdde**, *led*.

## Accentuation.

### 11.

The accent in Old English falls usually on the radical syllable, never on the inflectional ending: **bringan**, *to bring*; **stānas**, *stones*; **bérende**, *bearing*; **ídelnes**, *idleness*; **fréondscipe**, *friendship*.

But in the case of compound nouns, adjectives, and adverbs the first member of the compound (unless it be **ge-** or **be-**) receives the stronger stress: **héofon-rīce**, *heaven-kingdom*; **ǫnd-giet**, *intelligence*; **sōð-fæst**, *truthful*; **gód-cund**, *divine*; **éall-unga**, *entirely*; **blíðe-līce**, *blithely*. But **be-hát**, *promise*; **ge-béd**, *prayer*; **ge-féalīc**, *joyous*; **be-sǫne**, *immediately*.

Compound verbs, however, have the stress on the radical syllable: **for-giefan**, *to forgive*; **of-linnan**, *to cease*; **ā-cnāwan**, *to know*; **wið-stóndan**, *to withstand*; **on-sácan**, *to resist*.

NOTE.—The tendency of nouns to take the stress on the prefix, while verbs retain it on the root, is exemplified in many Modern English words: *préference*, *prefér*; *cóntract* (noun), *contráct* (verb); *ábstinence*, *abstáin*; *pérfume* (noun), *perfúme* (verb).

1. Vowels are said to be round, or rounded, when the lip-opening is rounded; that is, when the lips are thrust out and puckered as if preparing to pronounce *w*. Thus *o* and *u* are round vowels: add *-ing* to each, and phonetically you have added *-wing*. *E.g. go<sup>w</sup>ing, su<sup>w</sup>ing.*

2. A little practice will enable the student to see the appropriateness of calling these consonants voiced and voiceless. Try to pronounce a voiced consonant,—*d* in *den*, for example, but without the assistance of *en*,—and there will be heard a gurgle, or *vocal* murmur. But in *t*, of *ten*, there is no sound at all, but only a feeling of tension in the organs.

3. Taken separately, every syllable ending in a single consonant is long. It may be said, therefore, that all closed syllables are long; but in the natural flow of language, the single final consonant of a syllable so often blends with a following initial vowel, the syllable thus becoming open and short, that such syllables are not recognized as prevailingly long. Cf. Modern English *at all* (= *a-tall*).



## CHAPTER III.

### INFLECTIONS.

#### Cases.

#### 12.

There are five cases in Old English: the nominative, the genitive, the dative, the accusative, and the instrumental. <sup>1</sup> Each of them, except the nominative, may be governed by prepositions. When used without prepositions, they have, in general, the following functions:

(a) The nominative, as in Modern English, is the case of the subject of a finite verb.

(b) The genitive (the possessive case of Modern English) is the case of the possessor or source. It may be called the *of* case.

(c) The dative is the case of the indirect object. It may be called the *to* or *for* case.

(d) The accusative (the objective case of Modern English) is the case of the

direct object.

(e) The instrumental, which rarely differs from the dative in form, is the case of the means or the method. It may be called the *with* or *by* case.

The following paradigm of **mūð**, *the mouth*, illustrates the several cases (the article being, for the present, gratuitously added in the Modern English equivalents):

	<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
N.	<b>mūð</b> = <i>the mouth</i> .	<b>mūð-as</b> = <i>the mouths</i> .
G.	<b>mūð-es</b> <sup>2</sup> = <i>of the mouth (= the mouth's)</i> .	<b>mūð-a</b> = <i>of the mouths (= the mouths')</i> .
D.	<b>mūð-e</b> = <i>to or for the mouth</i> .	<b>mūð-um</b> = <i>to or for the mouths</i> .
A.	<b>mūð</b> = <i>the mouth</i> .	<b>mūð-as</b> = <i>the mouths</i> .
I.	<b>mūðe</b> = <i>with or by means of the mouth</i> .	<b>mūð-um</b> = <i>with or by means of the mouths</i> .

## Gender.

### 13.

The gender of Old English nouns, unlike that of Modern English, depends partly on meaning and partly on form, or ending. Thus **mūð**, *mouth*, is masculine; **tunge**, *tongue*, feminine; **ēage**, *eye*, neuter.

No very comprehensive rules, therefore, can be given; but the gender of every noun should be learned with its meaning. Gender will be indicated in the vocabularies by the different gender forms of the definite article, **sē** for the masculine, **sēo** for the feminine, and **ðæt** for the neuter: **sē mūð**, **sēo tunge**, **ðæt ēage** = *the mouth, the tongue, the eye*.

All nouns ending in **-dōm**, **-hād**, **-scipe**, or **-ere** are masculine (*cf.* Modern English *wisdom, childhood, friendship, worker*). Masculine, also, are nouns ending in **-a**.

Those ending in **-nes** or **-ung** are feminine (*cf.* Modern English *goodness*, and gerundial forms in *-ing*: *seeing is believing*).

Thus **sē wīsdōm**, *wisdom*; **sē cildhād**, *childhood*; **sē frēondscipe**, *friendship*; **sē fiscere**, *fisher(man)*; **sē hunta**, *hunter*; **sēo gelīcnes**, *likeness*; **sēo leorning**, *learning*.

## Declensions.

## 14.

There are two great systems of declension in Old English, the Vowel Declension and the Consonant Declension. A noun is said to belong to the Vowel Declension when the final letter of its stem is a vowel, this vowel being then known as the *stem-characteristic*; but if the stem-characteristic is a consonant, the noun belongs to the Consonant Declension. There might have been, therefore, as many subdivisions of the Vowel Declension in Old English as there were vowels, and as many subdivisions of the Consonant Declension as there were consonants. All Old English nouns, however, belonging to the Vowel Declension, ended their stems originally in **a**, **ō**, **i**, or **u**. Hence there are but four subdivisions of the Vowel Declension: **a**-stems, **ō**-stems, **i**-stems, and **u**-stems.

The Vowel Declension is commonly called the Strong Declension, and its nouns Strong Nouns.

NOTE.—The terms Strong and Weak were first used by Jacob Grimm (1785-1863) in the terminology of verbs, and thence transferred to nouns and adjectives. By a Strong Verb, Grimm meant one that could form its preterit out of its own resources; that is, without calling in the aid of an additional syllable: Modern English *run, ran; find, found*; but verbs of the Weak Conjugation had to borrow, as it were, an inflectional syllable: *gain, gained; help, helped*.

## 15.

The stems of nouns belonging to the Consonant Declension ended, with but few exceptions, in the letter **n** (*cf.* Latin *homin-em, ration-em*, Greek *ποιμέν-α*). They are called, therefore, **n**-stems, the Declension itself being known as the **n**-Declension, or the Weak Declension. The nouns, also, are called Weak Nouns.

## 16.

If every Old English noun had preserved the original Germanic stem-characteristic (or final letter of the stem), there would be no difficulty in deciding at once whether any given noun is an **a**-stem, **ō**-stem, **i**-stem, **u**-stem, or **n**-stem; but these final letters had, for the most part, either been dropped, or fused with the case-endings, long before the period of historic Old English. It is only, therefore, by a rigid comparison of the Germanic languages with one another, and with the other Aryan languages, that scholars are able to reconstruct a single Germanic language, in which the original stem-characteristics may be

seen far better than in any one historic branch of the Germanic group (§ 5, Note).

This hypothetical language, which bears the same ancestral relation to the historic Germanic dialects that Latin bears to the Romance tongues, is known simply as *Germanic* (Gmc.), or as *Primitive Germanic*. Ability to reconstruct Germanic forms is not expected of the students of this book, but the following table should be examined as illustrating the basis of distinction among the several Old English declensions (O.E. = Old English, Mn.E. = Modern English):

I. Strong or Vowel Declensions	{	(1) <b>a</b> -stems	{	Gmc. <i>staina-z</i> , O.E. <b>stān</b> , Mn.E. <i>stone</i> .	
		(2) <b>ō</b> -stems	{	Gmc. <i>hallō</i> , O.E. <b>heall</b> , Mn.E. <i>hall</i> .	
		(3) <b>i</b> -stems	{	Gmc. <i>bōni-z</i> , O.E. <b>bēn</b> , Mn.E. <i>boon</i> .	
		(4) <b>u</b> -stems	{	Gmc. <i>sunu-z</i> , O.E. <b>sunu</b> , Mn.E. <i>son</i> .	
II. Consonant Declensions	{	(1) <b>n</b> -stems (Weak Declension)	{	Gmc. <i>tungōn-iz</i> , O.E. <b>tung-an</b> , Mn.E. <i>tongue-s</i> .	
		(2) Remnants of other Consonant Declensions	(a)	{	Gmc. <i>fōt-iz</i> , O.E. <b>fēt</b> , Mn.E. <i>feet</i> .
			(b)	{	Gmc. <i>frijōnd-iz</i> , O.E. <b>frīend</b> , Mn.E. <i>friend-s</i> .
(c)	{		Gmc. <i>brōðr-iz</i> , O.E. <b>brōðor</b> , Mn.E. <i>brother-s</i> .		

NOTE.—“It will be seen that if Old English **ēage**, *eye*, is said to be an **n**-stem, what is meant is this, that at some former period the kernel of the word ended in **-n**, while, as far as the Old English language proper is concerned, all that is implied is that the word is inflected in a certain manner.” (Jespersen, *Progress in Language*, § 109).

This is true of all Old English stems, whether Vowel or Consonant. The division, therefore, into **a-** stems, **ō-** stems, etc., is made in the interests of grammar as well as of philology.

## Conjugations.

### 17.

There are, likewise, two systems of conjugation in Old English: the Strong or Old Conjugation, and the Weak or New Conjugation.

The verbs of the Strong Conjugation (the so-called Irregular Verbs of Modern English) number about three hundred, of which not one hundred remain in Modern English (§ 101, Note). They form their preterit and frequently their past participle by changing the radical vowel of the present stem. This vowel change or modification is called *ablaut* (pronounced *áhp-lowt*): Modern English *sing, sang, sung; rise, rose, risen*. As the radical vowel of the preterit plural is often different from that of the preterit singular, there are four *principal parts* or *tense stems* in an Old English strong verb, instead of the three of Modern English. The four principal parts in the conjugation of a strong verb are (1) the present indicative, (2) the preterit indicative singular, (3) the preterit indicative plural, and (4) the past participle.

Strong verbs fall into seven groups, illustrated in the following table:

PRESENT.	PRET. SING.	PRET. PLUR.	PAST PARTICIPLE.
I. <b>Bītan</b> , to bite: <b>Ic bīt-e</b> , I bite or shall bite. <sup>3</sup>	<b>Ic bāt</b> , I bit.	<b>Wē bit-on</b> , we bit.	<b>Ic hæbbe ge<sup>4</sup>-biten</b> , I have bitten.
II. <b>Bēodan</b> , to bid: <b>Ic bēod-e</b> , I bid or shall bid.	<b>Ic bēad</b> , I bade.	<b>Wē bud-on</b> , we bade.	<b>Ic hæbbe ge-boden</b> , I have bidden.
III. <b>Bindan</b> , to bind: <b>Ic bind-e</b> , I bind or	<b>Ic bōnd</b> , I	<b>Wē bund-on</b> ,	<b>Ic hæbbe ge-bund-en</b> ,

<i>shall bind.</i>	<i>bound.</i>	<i>we bound.</i>	<i>I have bound.</i>
IV.			
<b>Beran, to bear:</b>			
<b>Ic ber-e, I bear or shall bear.</b>	<b>Ic bær, I bore.</b>	<b>Wē bāer-on, we bore.</b>	<b>Ic hǣbbe ge-bor-en, I have borne.</b>
V.			
<b>Metan, to measure:</b>			
<b>Ic met-e, I measure or shall measure.</b>	<b>Ic mæt, I measured.</b>	<b>Wē mǣt-on, we measured.</b>	<b>Ic hǣbbe ge-met-en, I have measured.</b>
VI.			
<b>Faran, to go:</b>			
<b>Ic far-e, I go or shall go.</b>	<b>Ic fōr, I went.</b>	<b>Wē fōr-on, we went.</b>	<b>Ic eom <sup>5</sup> ge-far-en, I have (am) gone.</b>
VII.			
<b>Feallan, to fall:</b>			
<b>Ic feall-e, I fall or shall fall.</b>	<b>Ic fēoll, I fell.</b>	<b>Wē fēoll-on, we fell.</b>	<b>Ic eom <sup>5</sup> ge-feall-en, I have (am) fallen.</b>

## 18.

The verbs of the Weak Conjugation (the so-called Regular Verbs of Modern English) form their preterit and past participle by adding to the present stem a suffix <sup>6</sup> with *d* or *t*: Modern English *love, loved; sleep, slept*.

The stem of the preterit plural is never different from the stem of the preterit singular; hence these verbs have only three distinctive tense-stems, or principal parts: viz., (1) the present indicative, (2) the preterit indicative, and (3) the past participle.

Weak verbs fall into three groups, illustrated in the following table:

PRESENT.	PRETERIT.	PAST PARTICIPLE.
I.		
<b>Fremman, to perform:</b>		

<b>Ic frēm̄m-e</b> , <i>I perform or shall perform.</i>	<b>Ic frēm̄-ede</b> , <i>I performed.</i>	<b>Ic hǣbbe ge-frēm̄-ed</b> , <i>I have performed.</i>
II.		
<b>Bodian</b> , <i>to proclaim:</i>		
<b>Ic bodi-e</b> , <i>I proclaim or shall proclaim.</i>	<b>Ic bod-ode</b> , <i>I proclaimed.</i>	<b>Ic hǣbbe ge-bod-od</b> , <i>I have proclaimed.</i>
III.		
<b>Habban</b> , <i>to have:</i>		
<b>Ic hǣbbe</b> , <i>I have or shall have.</i>	<b>Ic hǣf-de</b> , <i>I had.</i>	<b>Ic hǣbbe ge-hǣf-d</b> , <i>I have had.</i>

## 19.

There remain a few verbs (chiefly the Auxiliary Verbs of Modern English) that do not belong entirely to either of the two conjugations mentioned. The most important of them are, **Ic mæg** *I may*, **Ic mihte** *I might*; **Ic cƿn** *I can*, **Ic cūðe** *I could*; **Ic mōt** *I must*, **Ic mōste** *I must*; **Ic sceal** *I shall*, **Ic sceolde** *I should*; **Ic eom** *I am*, **Ic wæs** *I was*; **Ic wille** *I will*, **Ic wolde** *I would*; **Ic dō** *I do*, **Ic dyde** *I did*; **Ic gā** *I go*, **Ic ēode** *I went*.

All but the last four of these are known as Preterit-Present Verbs. The present tense of each of them is *in origin* a preterit, *in function* a present. Cf. Modern English *ought* (= *owed*).



1. Most grammars add a sixth case, the vocative. But it seems best to consider the vocative as only a *function* of the nominative *form*.
2. Of course our “apostrophe and s” (= ’s) comes from the Old English genitive ending **-es**. The *e* is preserved in *Wednesday* (= Old English **Wōdnes dæg**). But at a very early period it was thought that *John’s book*, for example, was a shortened form of *John his book*. Thus Addison (*Spectator*, No. 135) declares ’s a survival of *his*. How, then, would he explain the *s* of *his*? And how would he dispose of *Mary’s book*?
3. Early West Saxon had no distinctive form for the future. The present was used both as present proper and as future. Cf. Modern English “I go home tomorrow,” or “I am going home tomorrow” for “I shall go home tomorrow.”
4. The prefix **ge-** (Middle English *y-*), cognate with Latin *co* (*con*) and implying completeness of action, was not always used. It never occurs in the past participles of compound verbs: **op-feallan**, *to fall off*, past participle **op-feallen** (not **op-gefeallen**). Milton errs in prefixing it to a present participle:

“What needs my Shakespeare, for his honour’d bones,  
The labour of an age in piled stones?  
Or that his hallow’d reliques should be hid  
Under a star-ypointing pyramid.”

—*Epitaph on William Shakespeare.*

And Shakespeare misuses it in “Y-ravished,” a preterit (*Pericles* III, *Prologue* l. 35).

It survives in the archaic *y-clept* (Old English **ge-clypod**, called). It appears as *a* in *aware* (Old English **ge-wær**), as *e* in *enough* (Old English **ge-nōh**), and as *i* in *handiwork* (Old English **hand-ge-weorc**).

5. With intransitive verbs denoting *change of condition*, the Old English auxiliary is usually some form of *to be* rather than *to have*. See § 139.
6. The theory that *loved*, for example, is a fused form of *love-did* has

been generally given up. The dental ending was doubtless an Indo-Germanic suffix, which became completely specialized only in the Teutonic languages.



## CHAPTER IV. ORDER OF WORDS.

### 20.

The order of words in Old English is more like that of Modern German than of Modern English. Yet it is only the Transposed order that the student will feel to be at all un-English; and the Transposed order, even before the period of the Norman Conquest, was fast yielding place to the Normal order.

The three divisions of order are (1) Normal, (2) Inverted, and (3) Transposed.

(1) Normal order = subject + predicate. In Old English, the Normal order is found chiefly in independent clauses. The predicate is followed by its modifiers: **Sē hwæl bið micle læssa þonne oðre hwalas**, *That whale is much smaller than other whales*; **Ɔnd hē geseah twā scipu**, *And he saw two ships*.

(2) Inverted order = predicate + subject. This order occurs also in independent clauses, and is employed (a) when some modifier of the predicate precedes the predicate, the subject being thrown behind. The words most frequently causing Inversion in Old English prose are **þā then**, **þonne then**, and **þær there**: **Ɔā fōr hē**, *Then went he*; **Ɔonne ærnað hȳ ealle tōweard þāem fēo**, *Then gallop they all toward the property*; **ac þær bið medo genōh**, *but there is mead enough*.

Inversion is employed (b) in interrogative sentences: **Lufast ðū mē?** *Lovest thou me?* and (c) in imperative sentences: **Cume ðīn rīce**, *Thy kingdom come*.

(3) Transposed order = subject ... predicate. That is, the predicate comes last in the sentence, being preceded by its modifiers. This is the order observed in dependent clauses: <sup>1</sup> **Ɔonne cymeð sē man sē þæt swiftoste hors hafað**, *Then comes the man that has the swiftest horse* (literally, *that the swiftest horse has*); **Ne mētte hē ær nān gebūn land, siþpan hē frōm his āgnum hām fōr**, *Nor*

*did he before find any cultivated land, after he went from his own home (literally, after he from his own home went).*

## 21.

Two other peculiarities in the order of words require a brief notice.

(1) Pronominal datives and accusatives usually precede the predicate: **Hē hine oferwann**, *He overcame him* (literally, *He him overcame*); **Dryhten him andwyrde**, *The Lord answered him*. But substantival datives and accusatives, as in Modern English, follow the predicate. The following sentence illustrates both orders: **Hȳ genāmon Ioseph, ƿnd hine gesealdon cīpemƿnnum, ƿnd hȳ hine gesealdon in Ēgypta lƿnd**, *They took Joseph, and sold him to merchants, and they sold him into Egypt* (literally, *They took Joseph, and him sold to merchants, and they him sold into Egyptians' land*).

NOTE.—The same order prevails in the case of pronominal nominatives used as predicate nouns: **Ɔc hit eom**, *It is I* (literally, *I it am*); **Ɖū hit eart**, *It is thou* (literally, *Thou it art*).

(2) The attributive genitive, whatever relationship it expresses, usually precedes the noun which it qualifies: **Breoton is gārsecges īgland**, *Britain is an island of the ocean* (literally, *ocean's island*); **Swilce hit is ēac berende on węcga ōrum**, *Likewise it is also rich in ores of metals* (literally, *metals' ores*); **Cyninga cyning**, *King of kings* (literally, *Kings' king*); **Gē witon Godes rīces gerȳne**, *Ye know the mystery of the kingdom of God* (literally, *Ye know God's kingdom's mystery*).

A preposition governing the word modified by the genitive, precedes the genitive: <sup>2</sup> **On ealdra manna sęgenum**, *In old men's sayings*; **Æt Ɖæra stræta ęndum**, *At the ends of the streets* (literally, *At the streets' ends*); **For ealra Ɖīnra hālgena lufan**, *For all thy saints' love*. See, also, § 94, (5).

1. But in the *Voyages of Ohthere and Wulfstan*, in which the style is apparently more that of oral than of written discourse, the Normal is more frequent than the Transposed order in dependent clauses. In his other writings Alfred manifests a partiality for the Transposed order in dependent clauses, except in the case of substantival clauses introduced by **þæt**. Such clauses show a marked tendency to revert to their Normal *oratio recta* order. The norm thus set by the indirect affirmative clause seems to have proved an important factor in the

ultimate disappearance of Transposition from dependent clauses. The influence of Norman French helped only to consummate forces that were already busily at work.

2. The positions of the genitive are various. It frequently follows its noun: **þā bearn þāra Aðeniensa**, *The children of the Athenians*. It may separate an adjective and a noun: **Ān lýtēl sǣs earm**, *A little arm of (the) sea*. The genitive may here be construed as an adjective, or part of a compound = *A little sea-arm*; **Mid mōnegum Godes gifum**, *With many God-gifts = many divine gifts*.



## CHAPTER V.

### PRACTICAL SUGGESTIONS.

22.

In the study of Old English, the student must remember that he is dealing not with a foreign or isolated language but with the earlier forms of his own mother tongue. The study will prove profitable and stimulating in proportion as close and constant comparison is made of the old with the new. The guiding principles in such a comparison are reducible chiefly to two. These are (1) the regular operation of phonetic laws, resulting especially in certain Vowel Shiftings, and (2) the alterations in form and syntax that are produced by Analogy.

(1) “The former of these is of physiological or *natural* origin, and is perfectly and inflexibly regular throughout the same period of the same language; and even though different languages show different phonetic habits and predilections, there is a strong general resemblance between the changes induced in one language and in another; many of the particular laws are true for many languages.

(2) “The other principle is psychical, or mental, or *artificial*, introducing various more or less capricious changes that are supposed to be emendations; and its operation is, to some extent, uncertain and fitful.”<sup>1</sup>

## (1) Vowel-Shiftings.

23.

It will prove an aid to the student in acquiring the inflections and vocabulary of Old English to note carefully the following shiftings that have taken place in the gradual growth of the Old English vowel system into that of Modern English.

(1) As stated in § 3, the Old English inflectional vowels, which were all short and unaccented, weakened in early Middle English to *e*. This *e* in Modern English is frequently dropped:

OLD ENGLISH.	MIDDLE ENGLISH.	MODERN ENGLISH.
stān-as	ston-es	stones
sun-u	sun-e	son
sun-a	sun-e	sons
ox-an	ox-en	oxen
swift-ra	swift-er	swifter
swift-ost	swift-est	swiftest
lōc-ode	lok-edē	looked

(2) The Old English long vowels have shifted their phonetic values with such uniform regularity that it is possible in almost every case to infer the Modern English sound; but our spelling is so chaotic that while the student may infer the modern sound, he cannot always infer the modern symbol representing the sound.

OLD ENGLISH. MODERN ENGLISH.

<b>ā</b>	<i>o</i> (as in <i>no</i> ) <sup>2</sup>	{ <b>nā</b> = <i>no</i> ; <b>stān</b> = <i>stone</i> ; <b>bān</b> = <i>bone</i> ; <b>rād</b> = <i>road</i> ; <b>āc</b> = <i>oak</i> ; <b>hāl</b> = <i>whole</i> ; <b>hām</b> = <i>home</i> ; <b>sāwan</b> = <i>to sow</i> ; <b>gāst</b> = <i>ghost</i> .
<b>ē</b>	<i>e</i> (as in <i>he</i> )	{ <b>hē</b> = <i>he</i> ; <b>wē</b> = <i>we</i> ; <b>ðē</b> = <i>thee</i> ; <b>mē</b> = <i>me</i> ; <b>gē</b> = <i>ye</i> ; <b>hēl</b> = <i>heel</i> ; <b>wērig</b> = <i>weary</i> ; <b>gelēfan</b> = <i>to believe</i> ; <b>gēs</b> = <i>geese</i> .
<b>ī (ȳ)</b>	<i>i</i> ( <i>y</i> ) (as in <i>mine</i> )	{ <b>mīn</b> = <i>mine</i> ; <b>ðīn</b> = <i>thine</i> ; <b>wīr</b> = <i>wire</i> ; <b>mȳs</b> = <i>mice</i> ; <b>rīm</b> = <i>rime</i> (wrongly spelt <i>rhyme</i> ); <b>lȳs</b> = <i>lice</i> ; <b>bī</b> = <i>by</i> ; <b>scīnan</b> = <i>to shine</i> ; <b>stig-rāp</b> = <i>sty-rope</i> (shortened to <i>stirrup</i> , <b>stīgan</b> meaning <i>to mount</i> ).
<b>ō</b>	<i>o</i> (as in <i>do</i> )	{ <b>dō</b> = <i>I do</i> ; <b>tō</b> = <i>too, to</i> ; <b>gōs</b> = <i>goose</i> ; <b>tōð</b> = <i>tooth</i> ; <b>mōna</b> = <i>moon</i> ; <b>ðōm</b> = <i>doom</i> ; <b>mōd</b> = <i>mood</i> ; <b>wōgian</b> = <i>to woo</i> ; <b>slōh</b> = <i>I slew</i> .
<b>ū</b>	<i>ou</i> ( <i>ow</i> ) (as in <i>thou</i> )	{ <b>ðū</b> = <i>thou</i> ; <b>fūl</b> = <i>foul</i> ; <b>hūs</b> = <i>house</i> ; <b>nū</b> = <i>now</i> ; <b>hū</b> = <i>how</i> ; <b>tūn</b> = <i>town</i> ; <b>ūre</b> = <i>our</i> ; <b>ūt</b> = <i>out</i> ; <b>hlūd</b> = <i>loud</i> ; <b>ðūsēnd</b> = <i>thousand</i> .
		{ <b>ǣ</b> : <b>sǣ</b> = <i>sea</i> ; <b>mǣl</b> = <i>meal</i> ; <b>dǣlan</b> = <i>to deal</i> ; <b>clǣne</b> = <i>clean</i> ; <b>grǣdig</b> = <i>greedy</i> .
		{ <b>ēa</b> : <b>ēare</b> = <i>ear</i> ; <b>ēast</b> = <i>east</i> ; <b>drēam</b> = <i>dream</i> ; <b>gēar</b> = <i>year</i> ; <b>bēatan</b> =

**ǣ, ēa, ēo**    *ea* (as in *sea*)    *to beat.*  
**ēo:** *ðrēo* = *three*; *drēorig* = *dreary*; *sēo* = *she*, *hrēod* = *reed*; *dēop*  
= *deep*.

## (2) Analogy.

### 24.

But more important than vowel shifting is the great law of Analogy, for Analogy shapes not only words but constructions. It belongs, therefore, to Etymology and to Syntax, since it influences both form and function. By this law, minorities tend to pass over to the side of the majorities. “The greater mass of cases exerts an assimilative influence upon the smaller.”<sup>3</sup> The effect of Analogy is to simplify and to regularize. “The main factor in getting rid of irregularities is group-influence, or Analogy—the influence exercised by the members of an association-group on one another... Irregularity consists in partial isolation from an association-group through some formal difference.”<sup>4</sup>

Under the influence of Analogy, entire declensions and conjugations have been swept away, leaving in Modern English not a trace of their former existence. There are in Old English, for example, five plural endings for nouns, **-as**, **-a**, **-e**, **-u**, and **-an**. No one could well have predicted<sup>5</sup> that **-as** (Middle English *-es*) would soon take the lead, and become the norm to which the other endings would eventually conform, for there were more **an**-plurals than **as**-plurals; but the **as**-plurals were doubtless more often employed in everyday speech. *Oxen* (Old English **oxan**) is the sole pure survival of the hundreds of Old English **an**-plurals. No group of feminine nouns in Old English had **-es** as the genitive singular ending; but by the close of the Middle English period all feminines formed their genitive singular in *-es* (or *-s*, Modern English *'s*) after the analogy of the Old English masculine and neuter nouns with **es**-genitives. The weak preterits in **-ode** have all been leveled under the **ed**-forms, and of the three hundred strong verbs in Old English more than two hundred have become weak.

These are not cases of derivation (as are the shifted vowels): Modern English *-s* in *sons*, for example, could not possibly be derived from Old English **-a** in **sunā**, or Middle English *-e* in *sune* (§ 23, (1)). They are cases of replacement by Analogy.

A few minor examples will quicken the student's appreciation of the nature of

A few minor examples will quicken the student's appreciation of the nature of the influence exercised by Analogy:

(a) The intrusive *l* in *could* (Chaucer always wrote *coud* or *coude*) is due to association with *would* and *should*, in each of which *l* belongs by etymological right.

(b) *He need not* (for *He needs not*) is due to the assimilative influence of the auxiliaries *may*, *can*, etc., which have never added -s for their third person singular (§ 137).

(c) *I am friends with him*, in which *friends* is a crystalized form for *on good terms*, may be traced to the influence of such expressions as *He and I are friends*, *They are friends*, etc.

(d) Such errors as are seen in *runned*, *seed*, *gooses*, *badder*, *hissself*, *says I* (usually coupled with *says he*) are all analogical formations. Though not sanctioned by good usage, it is hardly right to call these forms the products of "false analogy." The grammar involved is false, because unsupported by literary usages and traditions; but the analogy on which these forms are built is no more false than the law of gravitation is false when it makes a dress sit unconventionally.

1. Skeat, *Principles of English Etymology*, Second Series, § 342. But Jespersen, with Collitz and others, stoutly contests "the theory of sound laws and analogy sufficing between them to explain everything in linguistic development."

2. But Old English *ā* preceded by *w* sometimes gives Modern English *o* as in *two*: *twā* = *two*; *hwā* = *who*; *hwām* = *whom*.

3. Whitney, *Life and Growth of Language*, Chap. IV.

4. Sweet, *A New English Grammar*, Part I., § 535.

5. As Skeat says (§ 22, (2)), Analogy is "fitful." It enables us to explain many linguistic phenomena, but not to anticipate them. The multiplication of books tends to check its influence by perpetuating the forms already in use. Thus Chaucer employed nine *en*-plurals, and his influence served for a time to check the further encroachment of the *es*-plurals. As soon as there is an acknowledged standard in any

language, the operation of Analogy is fettered.



PART II.  
—  
ETYMOLOGY AND SYNTAX.  
—

THE STRONG OR VOWEL DECLENSIONS OF NOUNS.  
THE **a**-DECLENSION.

—•••••—  
CHAPTER VI.

**(a) Masculine *a*-Stems.**

[O.E., M.E., and Mn.E. will henceforth be used for Old English, Middle English, and Modern English. Other abbreviations employed are self-explaining.]

25.

The **a**-Declension, corresponding to the Second or *o*-Declension of Latin and Greek, contains only (*a*) masculine and (*b*) neuter nouns. To this declension belong most of the O.E. masculine and neuter nouns of the Strong Declension. At a very early period, many of the nouns belonging properly to the **i**- and **u**-Declensions began to pass over to the **a**-Declension. This declension may therefore be considered the *normal declension* for all masculine and neuter nouns belonging to the Strong Declension.

26.

Paradigms of **sē mūð**, *mouth*; **sē fiscere**, *fisherman*; **sē hwæl**, *whale*; **sē mearh**,

horse; **sē finger**, *finger*:

<i>Sing. N.A.</i>	mūð	fiscer-e	hwæl	mearh	finger
<i>G.</i>	mūð-es	fiscer-es	hwæl-es	mēar-es	fingr-es
<i>D.I.</i>	mūð-e	fiscer-e	hwæl-e	mēar-e	fingr-e
<i>Plur N.A.</i>	mūð-as	fiscer-as	hwal-as	mēar-as	fingr-as
<i>G.</i>	mūð-a	fiscer-a	hwal-a	mēar-a	fingr-a
<i>D.I.</i>	mūð-um	fiscer-um	hwal-um	mēar-um	fingr-um

NOTE.—For meanings of the cases, see § 12. The dative and instrumental are alike in all nouns.

27.

The student will observe (1) that nouns whose nominative ends in **-e (fiscere)** drop this letter before adding the case endings; (2) that **æ** before a consonant (**hwæl**) changes to **a** in the plural; <sup>1</sup> (3) that **h**, preceded by **r (mearh)** or **l (seolh, seal)**, is dropped before an inflectional vowel, the stem diphthong being then lengthened by way of compensation; (4) that dissyllables (**finger**) having the first syllable long, usually syncopate the vowel of the second syllable before adding the case endings. <sup>2</sup>

28.

Paradigm of the Definite Article <sup>3</sup> **sē, sēo, ðæt** = *the*:

	<i>Masculine.</i>	<i>Feminine.</i>	<i>Neuter.</i>
<i>Sing. N.</i>	sē (se)	sēo	ðæt
<i>G.</i>	ðæs	ðǣre	ðæs
<i>D.</i>	ðǣm (ðām)	ðǣre	ðǣm (ðām)
<i>A.</i>	ðone	ðā	ðæt
<i>I.</i>	ðȳ, ðon	—	ðȳ, ðon
	<i>All Genders.</i>		
<i>Plur. N.A.</i>		ðā	
<i>G.</i>		ðāra	
<i>D.</i>		ðǣm (ðām)	

29.

VOCABULARY. <sup>4</sup>

**sē bōcere**, *scribe* [bōc].

**sē cyning**, *king*.

**sē dæg**, *day*.

**sē ende**, *end*.

**sē engal**, *angel* [angelus].

**sē frēodōm**, *freedom*.  
**sē fugol** (G. sometimes **fugles**), *bird* [fowl].  
**sē gār**, *spear* [gore, gar-fish].  
**sē heofon**, *heaven*.  
**sē hierde**, *herdsman* [shep-herd].  
**ƿnd (and)**, *and*.  
**sē seƿcg**, *man, warrior*.  
**sē seolh**, *seal*.  
**sē stān**, *stone*.  
**sē wealh**, *foreigner, Welshman* [wal-nut].  
**sē weall**, *wall*.  
**sē wīsdōm**, *wisdom*.  
**sē wulf**, *wolf*.

30.

#### EXERCISES.

I. 1. Ðāra wulfa mūðas. 2. Ðæs fisceres fingras. 3. Ðāra Wēala cyninge. 4. Ðǣm englum ƿnd ðǣm hierdum. 5. Ðāra daga ƿnde. 6. Ðǣm bōcerum ƿnd ðǣm seƿcgum ðæs cyninges. 7. Ðǣm seole ƿnd ðǣm fuglum. 8. Ðā stānas ƿnd ðā gāras. 9. Hwala ƿnd mēara. 10. Ðāra ƿngla wīsdōm. 11. Ðæs cyninges bōceres frēodōm. 12. Ðāra hierda fuglum. 13. Ðȳ stāne. 14. Ðǣm wealle.

II. 1. For the horses and the seals. 2. For the Welshmen's freedom. 3. Of the king's birds. 4. By the wisdom of men and angels. 5. With the spear and the stone. 6. The herdsman's seal and the warriors' spears. 7. To the king of heaven. 8. By means of the scribe's wisdom. 9. The whale's mouth and the foreigner's spear. 10. For the bird belonging to (= of) the king's scribe. 11. Of that finger.

1. Adjectives usually retain **æ** in closed syllables, changing it to **a** in open syllables: **hwæt** (*active*), **glæd** (*glad*), **wær** (*wary*) have G. **hwates**, **glades**, **wares**; D. **hwatum**, **gladum**, **warum**; but A. **hwætne**, **glædne**, **wærne**. Nouns, however, change to **a** only in open syllables followed by a guttural vowel, **a** or **u**. The **æ** in the open syllables of the singular is doubtless due to the analogy of the N.A. singular, both being closed syllables.

2. Cf. Mn.E. *drizz'ling*, *rememb'ring*, *abysmal* (*abysm* = *abiz<sup>u</sup>m*), *sick'ning*, in which the principle of syncope is precisely the same.

3. This may mean four things: (1) *The*, (2) *That* (demonstrative), (3) *He, she, it*, (4) *Who, which, that* (relative pronoun). Mn.E. demonstrative *that* is, of course, the survival of O.E. neuter **ðæt** in its demonstrative sense. Professor Victor Henry (*Comparative Grammar of English and German*, § 160, 3) sees a survival of dative plural demonstrative **ðāem** in such an expression as *in them days*. It seems more probable, however, that *them* so used has followed the lead of *this* and *these, that* and *those*, in their double function of pronoun and adjective. There was doubtless some such evolution as, *I saw them. Them what? Them boys.*

An unquestioned survival of the dative singular feminine of the article is seen in the *-ter* of *Atterbury* (= **æt ðāere byrig**, *at the town*); and **ðāem** survives in the *-ten* of *Attenborough*, the word *borough* having become an uninflected neuter. Skeat, *Principles*, First Series, § 185.

4. The brackets contain etymological hints that may help the student to discern relationships otherwise overlooked. The genitive is given only when not perfectly regular.



## CHAPTER VII.

### (b) Neuter *a*-Stems.

31.

The neuter nouns of the **a**-Declension differ from the masculines only in the N.A. plural.

32.

Paradigms of **ðæt hof**, *court, dwelling*; **ðæt bearn**, *child*; **ðæt bān**, *bone*; **ðæt**

**rīce**, *kingdom*; **ǰæt spere**, *spear*; **ǰæt werod**, *band of men*; **ǰæt tungol**, *star*:

<i>Sing. N.A.</i>	hof	bearn	bān	rīc-e	sper-e	werod	tungol
<i>G.</i>	hof-es	bearn-es	bān-es	rīc-es	sper-es	werod-es	tungl-es
<i>D.I.</i>	hof-e	bearn-e	bān-e	rīc-e	sper-e	werod-e	tungl-e
<i>Plur N.A.</i>	hof-u	bearn	bān	rīc-u	sper-u	werod	tungl-u
<i>G.</i>	hof-a	bearn-a	bān-a	rīc-a	sper-a	werod-a	tungl-a
<i>D.I.</i>	hof-um	bearn-um	bān-um	rīc-um	sper-um	werod-um	tungl-um

### 33.

The paradigms show (1) that monosyllables with short stems (**hof**) take **-u** in the N.A. plural; (2) that monosyllables with long stems (**bearn**, **bān**) do not distinguish the N.A. plural from the N.A. singular; <sup>1</sup> (3) that dissyllables in **-e**, whether the stem be long or short (**rīce**, **spere**), have **-u** in the N.A. plural; (4) that dissyllables ending in a consonant and having the first syllable short <sup>2</sup> (**werod**) do not usually distinguish the N.A. plural from the N.A. singular; (5) that dissyllables ending in a consonant and having the first syllable long (**tungol**) more frequently take **-u** in the N.A. plural.

NOTE.—Syncope occurs as in the masculine **a**-stems. See § 27, (4).

### 34.

Present and Preterit Indicative of **habban**, *to have*:

#### PRESENT.

- Sing.* 1. **Ic hǰebbe**, *I have*, or *shall have*.<sup>3</sup>  
 2. **ǰū hǰefst (hǰafst)**, *thou hast*, or *wilt have*.  
 3. **hē, hēo, hit hǰefǰ (hǰafaǰ)**, *he, she, it has*, or *will have*.  
*Plur.* 1. **wē habbaǰ**, *we have*, or *shall have*.  
 2. **gē habbaǰ**, *ye have*, or *will have*.  
 3. **hīe habbaǰ**, *they have*, or *will have*.

#### PRETERIT.

- Sing.* 1. **Ic hǰefde** *I had*.  
 2. **ǰū hǰefdest**, *thou hadst*.  
 3. **hē, hēo, hit hǰefde**, *he, she, it had*.  
*Plur.* 1. **wē hǰefdon**, *we had*.  
 2. **gē hǰefdon**, *ye had*.  
 3. **hīe hǰefdon**, *they had*.

NOTE.—The negative **ne**, *not*, which always precedes its verb, contracts with all the forms of **habban**. The negative loses its **e**, **habban** its **h**. **Ne + habban = nabban**; **Ic ne hǰebbe = Ic nǰebbe**; **Ic ne hǰefde = Ic nǰefde**, etc. The negative forms may be got, therefore, by simply substituting in each case **n** for **h**.

35.

VOCABULARY.

ðæt dæl, *dale*.

ðæt dēor, *animal* [deer <sup>4</sup>].

ðæt dor, *door*.

ðæt fæt, *vessel* [vat].

ðæt fȳr, *fire*.

ðæt gēar, *year*.

ðæt geoc, *yoke*.

ðæt geset, *habitation* [settlement].

ðæt hēafod, *head*.

ðæt hūs, *house*.

ðæt līc, *body* [lich-gate].

ðæt lim, *limb*.

on (with dat.) *in*.

ðæt spor, *track*.

ðæt wāpen, *weapon*.

ðæt wīf, *wife, woman*.

ðæt wīte, *punishment*.

ðæt word, *word*.

36.

EXERCISES.

I. 1. Hē hafað ðæs cyninges bearn. 2. Ðā Wēalas habbað ðā speru. 3. Ðā wīf habbað ðāra seġca wāpnu. 4. Ðū hæfst ðone fugol ƿnd ðæt hūs ðæs hierdes. 5. Hæfð <sup>5</sup> hēo ðā fatu <sup>6</sup>? 6. Hæfde hē ðæs wīfes līc on ðāem hofe? 7. Hē næfde ðæs wīfes līc; hē hæfde ðæs dēores hēafod. 8. Hæfð sē cyning gesetu on ðāem dæle? 9. Sē bōcere hæfð ðā sēolas on ðāem hūse. 10. Gē habbað frēodōm.

II. 1. They have yokes and spears. 2. We have not the vessels in the house. 3. He had fire in the vessel. 4. Did the woman have (= Had the woman) the children? 5. The animal has the body of the woman's child. 6. I shall have the heads of the wolves. 7. He and she have the king's houses. 8. Have not (= **Nabbað**) the children the warrior's weapons?

1. Note the many nouns in Mn.E. that are unchanged in the plural. These are either survivals of O.E. long stems, *swine, sheep, deer, folk*, or analogical forms, *fish, trout, mackerel, salmon*, etc.
2. Dissyllables whose first syllable is a prefix are, of course, excluded. They follow the declension of their last member: **gebed**, *prayer*, **gebedu**, *prayers*; **gefoht**, *battle*, **gefoht**, *battles*.
3. See § 17, Note 1. Note that (as in **hwæl**, § 27, (2)) **æ** changes to **a** when the following syllable contains **a**: **hæbbe**, but **hafast**.
4. The old meaning survives in Shakespeare's "Rats and mice and such small deer," *King Lear*, III, IV, 144.
5. See § 20, (2), (b).
6. See § 27, (2).



## CHAPTER VIII.

### THE **ō**-DECLENSION.

#### 37.

The **ō**-Declension, corresponding to the First or *ā*-Declension of Latin and Greek, contains only feminine nouns. Many feminine **i**-stems and **u**-stems soon passed over to this Declension. The **ō**-Declension may, therefore, be considered the *normal declension* for all strong feminine nouns.

#### 38.

Paradigms of **sēo giefu**, *gift*; **sēo wund**, *wound*; **sēo rōd**, *cross*; **sēo leornung**, *learning*; **sēo sāwol**, *soul*:

<i>Sing. N.</i>	gief-u	wund	rōd	leornung	sāwol
<i>G.</i>	gief-e	wund-e	rōd-e	leornung-a (e)	sāwl-e
<i>D.I.</i>	gief-e	wund-e	rōd-e	leornung-a (e)	sāwl-e
<i>A.</i>	gief-e	wund-e	rōd-e	leornung-a (e)	sāwl-e
<i>Plur. N.A.</i>	gief-a	wund-a	rōd-a	leornung-a	sāwl-a
<i>G.</i>	gief-a	wund-a	rōd-a	leornung-a	sāwl-a

D.I.  $\check{g}$ ief-um wund-um rōd-um leornung-um sāwl-um

### 39.

Note (1) that monosyllables with short stems (**giefu**) take **u** in the nominative singular; (2) that monosyllables with long stems (**wund, rōd**) present the unchanged stem in the nominative singular; (3) that dissyllables are declined as monosyllables, except that abstract nouns in **-ung** prefer **a** to **e** in the singular.

NOTE.—Syncope occurs as in masculine and neuter **a**-stems. See § 27, (4).

### 40.

Present and Preterit Indicative of **bēon (wesan)** to be:

PRESENT (first form).	PRESENT (second form).	PRETERIT.
<i>Sing.</i> 1. Ic eom	1. Ic bēom	1. Ic wæs
2. ðū eart	2. ðū bist	2. ðū wære
3. hē is	3. hē bið	3. hē wæs
<i>Plur.</i> 1. wē } 2. gē } 3. hīe }	sind(on), sint 2. gē } 3. hīe }	bēoð 2. gē } 3. hīe }
		wæron

NOTE 1.—The forms **bēom, bist**, etc. are used chiefly as future tenses in O.E. They survive to-day only in dialects and in poetry. Farmer Dobson, for example, in Tennyson's *Promise of May*, uses *be* for all persons of the present indicative, both singular and plural; and *there be* is frequent in Shakespeare for *there are*. The Northern dialect employed **aron** as well as **sindon** and **sind** for the present plural; hence Mn.E. *are*.

NOTE 2.—Fusion with **ne** gives **neom, neart, nis** for the present; **næs, nære, næron** for the preterit.

NOTE 3.—The verb *to be* is followed by the nominative case, as in Mn.E.; but when the predicate noun is plural, and the subject a neuter pronoun in the singular, the verb agrees in number with the predicate noun. The neuter singular **ðæt** is frequently employed in this construction: **Ðæt wæron eall Finnas**, *They were all Fins*; **Ðæt sind englas**, *They are angels*; **Ðæt wæron engla gāstas**, *They were angels' spirits*.

Notice, too, that O.E. writers do not say *It is I, It is thou*, but *I it am, Thou it art*: **Ic hit eom, ðū hit eart**. See § 21, (1), Note 1.

### 41.

## VOCABULARY.



**sēo brycg**, *bridge*.  
**sēo costnung**, *temptation*.  
**sēo cwalu**, *death* [quail, quell].  
**sēo fōr**, *journey* [faran].  
**sēo frōfor**, *consolation, comfort*.  
**sēo geoguð**, *youth*.  
**sēo glōf**, *glove*.  
**sēo hālignes** <sup>1</sup>, *holiness*.  
**sēo heall**, *hall*.  
**hēr**, *here*.  
**hwā**, *who?*  
**hwær**, *where?*  
**sēo lufu**, *love*.  
**sēo mearc**, *boundary* [mark, marches <sup>2</sup>].  
**sēo mēd**, *meed, reward*.  
**sēo mildheortnes**, *mild-heartedness, mercy*.  
**sēo stōw**, *place* [stow away].  
**ðær**, *there*.  
**sēo ðearf**, *need*.  
**sēo wylf**, *she wolf*.

42.

#### EXERCISES.

I. 1. Hwær is ðære brycge ende? 2. Hēr sind ðāra rīca mearca. 3. Hwā hæfð þā glōfa? 4. Ðær bið ðæm cyninge frōfre ðearf. 5. Sēo wund is on ðære wylfe hēafde. 6. Wē habbað costnunga. 7. Hīe nāeron on ðære healle. 8. Ic hit neom. 9. Ðæt wæron Wēalas. 10. Ðæt sind ðæs wīfes bearn.

II. 1. We shall have the women's gloves. 2. Where is the place? 3. He will be in the hall. 4. Those (**Ðæt**) were not the boundaries of the kingdom. 5. It was not I. 6. Ye are not the king's scribes. 7. The shepherd's words are full (**full** + gen.) of wisdom and comfort. 8. Where are the bodies of the children? 9. The gifts are not here. 10. Who has the seals and the birds?

1. All words ending in **-nes** double the **-s** before adding the case

endings.

2. As in *warden of the marches*.



## CHAPTER IX.

### THE **i**-DECLENSION AND THE **u**-DECLENSION.

#### The *i*-Declension. (See § 58.)

43.

The **i**-Declension, corresponding to the group of *i*-stems in the classical Third Declension, contains chiefly (*a*) masculine and (*b*) feminine nouns. The N.A. plural of these nouns ended originally in **-e** (from older **i**).

#### (*a*) Masculine *i*-Stems.

44.

These stems have almost completely gone over to the **a**-Declension, so that **-as** is more common than **-e** as the N.A. plural ending, whether the stem is long or short. The short stems all have **-e** in the N.A. singular.

45.

Paradigms of **sē wyrm**, *worm*; **sē wine**, *friend*.

<i>Sing. N.A.</i>	wyrm	win-e
<i>G.</i>	wyrm-es	win-es
<i>D.I.</i>	wyrm-e	win-e
<i>Plur N.A.</i>	wyrm-as	win-as (e)
<i>G.</i>	wyrm-a	win-a
<i>D.I.</i>	wyrm-um	win-um

#### Names of Peoples.

46.

The only **i**-stems that regularly retain **-e** of the N.A. plural are certain names of tribes or peoples used only in the plural.

47.

Paradigms of **ǭa E̅ngle**, *Angles*; **ǭa Norǭymbre**, *Northumbrians*; **ǭa lēode**, *people*:

<i>Plur. N.A.</i>	E̅ngle	Norǭymbre	lēode
<i>G.</i>	E̅ngla	Norǭymbra	lēoda
<i>D.I.</i>	E̅nglum	Norǭymbrum	lēodum

**(b) Feminine *i*-Stems.**

48.

The short stems (**fr̅em-u**) conform entirely to the declension of short **ō**-stems; long stems (**cw̅ēn**, **wyrt**) differ from long **ō**-stems in having no ending for the A. singular. They show, also, a preference for **-e** rather than **-a** in the N.A. plural.

49.

Paradigms of **s̅eo fr̅em-u**, *benefit*; **s̅eo cw̅ēn**, *woman, queen* [quean]; **s̅eo wyrt**, *root* [wort]:

<i>Sing. N.</i>	fr̅em-u	cw̅ēn	wyrt
<i>G.</i>	fr̅em-e	cw̅ēn-e	wyrt-e
<i>D.I.</i>	fr̅em-e	cw̅ēn-e	wyrt-e
<i>A.</i>	fr̅em-e	cw̅ēn	wyrt
<i>Plur. N.A.</i>	fr̅em-a	cw̅ēn-e (a)	wyrt-e (a)
<i>G.</i>	fr̅em-a	cw̅ēn-a	wyrt-a
<i>D.I.</i>	fr̅em-um	cw̅ēn-um	wyrt-um

**The *u*-Declension.**

50.

The **u**-Declension, corresponding to the group of **u**-stems in the classical Third Declension, contains no neuters, and but few (*a*) masculines and (*b*) feminines. The short-stemmed nouns of both genders (**sun-u**, **dur-u**) retain the final **u** of

the N.A. singular, while the long stems (**feld**, **hƿnd**) drop it. The influence of the masculine **a**-stems is most clearly seen in the long-stemmed masculines of the **u**-Declension (**feld**, **feld-es**, etc.).

NOTE.—Note the general aversion of all O.E. long stems to final **-u**: cf. N.A. plural **hof-u**, but **bearn**, **bān**; N. singular **gief-u**, but **wund**, **rōd**; N. singular **frēm-u**, but **cwēn**, **wyrt**; N.A. singular **sun-u**, **dur-u**, but **feld**, **hƿnd**.

### (a) Masculine *u*-Stems.

51.

Paradigms of **sē sun-u**, *son*; **sē feld**, *field*:

<i>Sing. N.A.</i>	sun-u	feld
<i>G.</i>	sun-a	feld-a (es)
<i>D.I.</i>	sun-a	feld-a (e)
<i>Plur N.A.</i>	sun-a	feld-a (as)
<i>G.</i>	sun-a	feld-a
<i>D.I.</i>	sun-um	feld-um

### (b) Feminine *u*-Stems.

52.

Paradigms of **sēo dur-u**, *door*; **sēo hƿnd**, *hand*:

<i>Sing. N.A.</i>	dur-u	hƿnd
<i>G.</i>	dur-a	hƿnd-a
<i>D.I.</i>	dur-a	hƿnd-a
<i>Plur N.A.</i>	dur-a	hƿnd-a
<i>G.</i>	dur-a	hƿnd-a
<i>D.I.</i>	dur-um	hƿnd-um

53.

Paradigm of the Third Personal Pronoun, **hē**, **hēo**, **hit** = *he*, *she*, *it*:

	<i>Masculine.</i>	<i>Feminine.</i>	<i>Neuter.</i>
<i>Sing. N.</i>	hē	hēo	hit
<i>G.</i>	his	hiere	his
<i>D.</i>	him	hiere	him
<i>A.</i>	hine, hiene	hīe	hit
	<i>All Genders.</i>		
<i>Plur. N.A.</i>		hīe	
<i>G.</i>		hiera	

D.                      him

54.

VOCABULARY.

(i-STEMS.)

sē **cierr**, *turn, time* [char, chare, chore].

sēo **dæd**, *deed*.

sē **dæ̅l**, *part* [a great deal].

ðā **Dene**, *Danes*.

sē **frēondscipe**, *friendship*.

sēo **hȳd**, *skin, hide*.

ðā **londlēode**, *natives*.

ðā **Mierce**, *Mercians*.

ðā **Rōmware**, *Romans*.

ðā **Seaxe**, *Saxons*.

sē **stęde**, *place* [in-stead of].

(u-STEMS.)

sēo **flōr**, *floor*.

sēo **nosu**, *nose*.

sē **sumor** (*G. sumeres, D. sumera*), *summer*.

sē **winter** (*G. wintres, D. wintra*), *winter*.

sē **wudu**, *wood, forest*.

NOTE.—The numerous masculine nouns ending in **-hād**,—**cildhād** (*childhood*), **wifhād** (*womanhood*),—belong to the **u**-stems historically; but they have all passed over to the **a**-Declension.

55.

EXERCISES.

I. 1. Ðā Seaxe habbað ðæs dēores hȳd on ðāem wuda. 2. Hwā hæfð ðā giefā?  
3. Ðā Mierce hīe <sup>1</sup> habbað. 4. Hwāer is ðæs Wēales fugol? 5. Ðā Dene hiene  
habbað. 6. Hwāer sindon hiera winas? 7. Hīe sindon on ðæs cyninges wuda.  
8. Ðā Rōmware ƿnd ðā Seaxe hæfdon ðā gāras ƿnd ðā geocu. 9. Hēo is on ðāem  
hūse on wintra, ƿnd on ðāem feldum on sumera. 10. Hwāer is ðæs hofes duru?  
11. Hēo <sup>2</sup> (= sēo duru) nis hēr.

II. 1. His friends have the bones of the seals and the bodies of the Danes. 2. Art

thou the king's son? 3. Has she her <sup>3</sup> gifts in her <sup>3</sup> hands? 4. Here are the fields of the natives. 5. Who had the bird? 6. I had it. <sup>2</sup> 7. The child had the worm in his <sup>3</sup> fingers. 8. The Mercians were here during (the) summer (**on** + dat.).

1. See § 21, (1).

2. Pronouns agree in gender with the nouns for which they stand. **Hit**, however, sometimes stands for inanimate things of both masculine and feminine genders. See Wūlfing (*l.c.*) I, § 238.

3. See § 76 (last sentence).



## CHAPTER X.

### PRESENT INDICATIVE ENDINGS OF STRONG VERBS.

56.

The unchanged stem of the present indicative may always be found by dropping **-an** of the infinitive: **feall-an**, to fall; **cēos-an**, to choose; **bīd-an**, to abide.

57.

The personal endings are:

<i>Sing.</i> 1.	-e	<i>Plur.</i> 1.	} -aǰ
2.	-est	2.	
3.	-eǰ	3.	

### ***i*-Umlaut.**

58.

The 2d and 3d singular endings were originally not **-est** and **-eǰ**, but **-is** and **-iǰ**; and the **i** of these older endings has left its traces upon almost every page of Early West Saxon literature. This **i**, though unaccented and soon displaced, exerted a powerful back influence upon the vowel of the preceding accented syllable. This influence, a form of regressive assimilation, is known as **i**-umlaut

(pronounced *oóm-lowt*). The vowel **i** or **j** (= *y*), being itself a palatal, succeeded in palatalizing every guttural vowel that preceded it, and in imposing still more of the **i**-quality upon diphthongs that were already palatal. <sup>1</sup> The changes produced were these:

<b>a</b>	became	<b>ę</b> (ǣ):	<b>męnn</b> (< *mann-iz), <i>men</i> .
<b>ā</b>	“	<b>ǣ</b>	<b>ǣnig</b> (< *ān-ig), <i>any</i> .
<b>u</b>	“	<b>y</b>	<b>wyllen</b> (< *wull-in), <i>woollen</i> .
<b>ū</b>	“	<b>ȳ</b>	<b>mȳs</b> (< *mūs-iz), <i>mice</i> .
<b>o</b>	“	<b>ę</b>	<b>dęhter</b> (< *dohtr-i), <i>to or for the daughter</i> .
<b>ō</b>	“	<b>ē</b>	<b>fēt</b> (< *fōt-iz), <i>feet</i> .
<b>ea</b>	“	<b>ie</b>	<b>wieẏð</b> (< *weax-ið), <i>he grows</i> ( <b>weaxan</b> = <i>to grow</i> ).
<b>ēa</b>	“	<b>īe</b>	<b>hīewð</b> (< *hēaw-ið), <i>he hews</i> ( <b>hēawan</b> = <i>to hew</i> ).
<b>eo</b>	“	<b>ie</b>	<b>wiercan</b> (< *weorc-jan), <i>to work</i> .
<b>ēo</b>	“	<b>īe</b>	<b>līehtan</b> (< *lēoht-jan), <i>to light</i> .

## The Unchanged Present Indicative.

### 59.

In the Northumbrian and Mercian dialects, as well as in the dialect of Late West Saxon, the 2d and 3d singular endings were usually joined to the present stem without modification either of the stem itself or of the personal endings. The complete absence of umlauted forms in the present indicative of Mn.E. is thus accounted for.

In Early West Saxon, however, such forms as the following are comparatively rare in the 2d and 3d singular:

<i>Sing.</i>	1.	Ic feall-e ( <i>I fall</i> )	cēos-e ( <i>I choose</i> )	bīd-e ( <i>I abide</i> )
	2.	ðū feall-est	cēos-est	bīd-est
	3.	hē feall-eð	cēos-eð	bīd-eð
<i>Plur.</i>	1.	wē	} feall-að    cēos-að    bīd-að	
	2.	gē		
	3.	hīe		

## The Present Indicative with i-Umlaut and Contraction.

### 60.

The 2d and 3d persons singular are distinguished from the other forms of the present indicative in Early West Saxon by (1) **i**-umlaut of the vowel of the stem, (2) syncope of the vowel of the ending, giving **-st** and **-ð** for **-est** and **-eð**, and

(3) contraction of **-st** and **-ð** with the final consonant or consonants of the stem.

## Contraction.

### 61.

The changes produced by **i**-umlaut have been already discussed. By these changes, therefore, the stems of the 2d and 3d singular indicative of such verbs as (1) **stōndan** (= **standan**), *to stand*, (2) **cuman**, *to come*, (3) **grōwan**, *to grow*, (4) **brūcan**, *to enjoy*, (5) **blāwan**, *to blow*, (6) **feallan**, *to fall*, (7) **hēawan**, *to hew*, (8) **weorpan**, *to throw*, and (9) **cēosan**, *to choose*, become respectively (1) **stēnd-**,<sup>2</sup> (2) **cym-**, (3) **grēw-**, (4) **brȳc-**, (5) **blāew-**, (6) **fiell-**, (7) **hīew-**, (8) **wierp-**, and (9) **cīes-**.

If the unchanged stem contains the vowel **e**, this is changed in the 2d and 3d singular to **i** (**ie**): **cweðan** *to say*, stem **cwið-**; **beran** *to bear*, stem **bier-**. But this mutation<sup>3</sup> had taken place long before the period of O.E., and belongs to the Germanic languages in general. It is best, however, to class the change of **e** to **i** or **ie** with the changes due to umlaut, since it occurs consistently in the 2d and 3d singular stems of Early West Saxon, and outlasted almost all of the umlaut forms proper.

If, now, the syncopated endings **-st** and **-ð** are added directly to the umlauted stem, there will frequently result such a massing of consonants as almost to defy pronunciation: **cwið-st**, *thou sayest*; **stēnd-st**, *thou standest*, etc. Some sort of contraction, therefore, is demanded for the sake of euphony. The ear and eye will, by a little practice, become a sure guide in these contractions. The following rules, however, must be observed. They apply only to the 2d and 3d singular of the present indicative:

(1) If the stem ends in a double consonant, one of the consonants is dropped:

- |                              |                              |                              |
|------------------------------|------------------------------|------------------------------|
| 1. feall-e ( <i>I fall</i> ) | 1. winn-e ( <i>I fight</i> ) | 1. swimm-e ( <i>I swim</i> ) |
| 2. fiell-st                  | 2. win-st                    | 2. swim-st                   |
| 3. fiell-ð                   | 3. win-ð                     | 3. swim-ð                    |

(2) If the stem ends in **-ð**, this is dropped:

- |                            |                                |
|----------------------------|--------------------------------|
| 1. cweð-e ( <i>I say</i> ) | 1. weorð-e ( <i>I become</i> ) |
| 2. cwi-st                  | 2. wier-st                     |
| 3. cwi-ð                   | 3. wier-ð                      |



(3) If the stem ends in **-d**, this is changed to **-t**. The **-ð** of the ending is then also changed to **-t**, and usually absorbed. Thus the stem of the 2d singular serves as stem and ending for the 3d singular:

1. stōnd-e (= stand-e) ( <i>I stand</i> )	1. bind-e ( <i>I bind</i> )	1. bīd-e ( <i>I abide</i> )	1. rīd-e ( <i>I ride</i> )
2. stēnt-st	2. bint-st	2. bīt-st	2. rīt-st
3. stēnt	3. bint	3. bīt (-t)	3. rīt (-t)

(4) If the stem ends already in **-t**, the endings are added as in (3), **-ð** being again changed to **-t** and absorbed:

1. brēot-e ( <i>I break</i> )	1. feoht-e ( <i>I fight</i> )	1. bīt-e ( <i>I bite</i> )
2. brīet-st	2. fieht-st	2. bīt-st
3. brīet (-t)	3. fieht	3. bīt (-t)

(5) If the stem ends in **-s**, this is dropped before **-st** (to avoid **-sst**), but is retained before **-ð**, the latter being changed to **-t**. Thus the 2d and 3d singulars are identical: <sup>4</sup>

1. cēos-e ( <i>I choose</i> )	1. rīs-e ( <i>I rise</i> )
2. cīe-st	2. rī-st
3. cīes-t	3. rīs-t

## 62.

### EXERCISES.

I. 1. Sē cyning fielð. 2. Ðā wīf cēosað ðā giefra. 3. Ðū stēntst on ðæm hūse.  
 4. Hē wierpð ðæt wæpen. 5. Sē secg hīewð ðā līc. 6. Ðæt sæd grēwð qnd wiexð  
 (*Mark iv. 27*). 7. Ic stōnde hēr, qnd ðū stēntst ðær. 8. “Ic hit eom,” cwið hē.  
 9. Hīe berað ðæs wulfes bān. 10. Hē hīe bint, qnd ic hine binde. 11. Ne rītst ðū?

II. 1. We shall bind him. 2. Who chooses the child’s gifts? 3. “He was not here,”  
 says she. 4. Wilt thou remain in the hall? 5. The wolves are biting (= bite) the  
 fishermen. 6. He enjoys <sup>5</sup> the love of his children. 7. Do you enjoy (= Enjoyest  
 thou) the consolation and friendship of the scribe? 8. Will he come? 9. I shall  
 throw the spear, and thou wilt bear the weapons. 10. The king’s son will become  
 king. 11. The army (**werod**) is breaking the doors and walls of the house.

1. The *palatal* vowels and diphthongs were long or short **æ, e, i, (ie), y, ea, eo**; the *guttural* vowels were long or short **a, o, u**.

2. The more common form for stems with **a** is **æ** rather than **ę**: **faran**,  
*to go*, 2d and 3d singular stem **fær-**; **sacan**, *to contend*, stem **sæc-**.

Indeed, **a** changes to **ę** via **æ** (Cosijn, *Altwestsächsische Grammatik*, I, § 32).

3. Umlaut is frequently called Mutation. Metaphony is still another name for the same phenomenon. The term Metaphony has the advantage of easy adjectival formation (metaphonic). It was proposed by Professor Victor Henry (*Comparative Grammar of English and German*, Paris, 1894), but has not been naturalized.

4. This happens also when the infinitive stem ends in **st**:

1. berst-e (*I burst*)
2. bier-st
3. bierst.

5. **Brūcan**, *to enjoy*, usually takes the genitive case, not the accusative. It means “to have joy of any thing.”



## CHAPTER XI.

### THE CONSONANT DECLENSIONS OF NOUNS.

#### The Weak or *n*-Declension.

63.

The **n**-Declension contains almost all of the O.E. nouns belonging to the Consonant Declensions. The stem characteristic **n** has been preserved in the oblique cases, so that there is no difficulty in distinguishing **n**-stems from the preceding vowel stems.

The **n**-Declension includes (*a*) masculines, (*b*) feminines, and (*c*) neuters. The masculines far outnumber the feminines, and the neuters contain only **ēage**, *eye* and **ēare**, *ear*. The masculines end in **-a**, the feminines and neuters in **-e**.

64.

Paradigms of (a) **sē hunta**, *hunter*; (b) **sēo tunge**, *tongue*; (c) **ðæt ēage**, *eye*:

<i>Sing. N.</i>	hunt-a	tung-e	ēag-e
<i>G.D.I.</i>	hunt-an	tung-an	ēag-an
<i>A.</i>	hunt-an	tung-an	ēag-e
<i>Plur N.A.</i>	hunt-an	tung-an	ēag-an
<i>G.</i>	hunt-ena	tung-ena	ēag-ena
<i>D.I.</i>	hunt-um	tung-um	ēag-um

65.

VOCABULARY.

**sē adesa**, *hatchet, adze*.

**sē āemetta**, *leisure* [empt-iness].

**sē bōna (bana)**, *murderer* [bane].

**sēo cirice**, *church* [Scotch kirk].

**sē cnapa (later, cnafa)**, *boy* [knave].

**sē cuma**, *stranger* [comer].

**ðæt ēare**, *ear*.

**sēo eorðe**, *earth*.

**sē gefēra**, *companion* [co-farer].

**sē guma**, *man* [bride-groom <sup>1</sup>].

**sēo heorte**, *heart*.

**sē mōna**, *moon*.

**sēo nādre**, *adder* [a nadder > an adder <sup>2</sup>].

**sē oxa**, *ox*.

**sē scēowyrhta**, *shoe-maker* [shoe-wright].

**sēo sunne**, *sun*.

**sē tēona**, *injury* [teen].

**biddan** (with dat. of person and gen. of thing <sup>3</sup>), *to request, ask for*.

**cwelan**, *to die* [quail].

**gescieppan**, *to create* [shape, land-scape, friend-ship].

**giefan** (with dat. of indirect object), *to give*.

**healdan**, *to hold*.

**helpan** (with dat.), *to help*.

**scēððan** <sup>4</sup> (with dat.), *to injure* [scathe].

**wiðstōndan (-standan)** (with dat.), *to withstand*.

**writan**, *to write*.

## EXERCISES.

I. 1. Sē scēowyrhta brȳcð his æmettan. 2. Ðā guman biddað ðǣm cnapan ðæs adesan. 3. Hwā is sē cuma? 4. Hielpst ðū ðǣm bōnan? 5. Ic him ne helpe. 6. Ðā bearn scēððað ðæs bōnan ēagum ƿnd ēarum. 7. Sē cuma cwielð on ðǣre cirican. 8. Sē hunta wiðstęnt ðǣm wulfum. 9. Ðā oxan berað ðæs cnapan gefēran. 10. Sē mōna ƿnd ðā tunglu sind on ðǣm heofonum. 11. Ðā huntan healdað ðǣre nǣdran tungan. 12. Hē hiere giefð ðā giefa. 13. Ðā werod scēððað ðæs cyninges feldum.

II. 1. Who will bind the mouths of the oxen? 2. Who gives him the gifts? 3. Thou art helping him, and I am injuring him. 4. The boy's companion is dying. 5. His nephew does not enjoy his leisure. 6. The adder's tongue injures the king's companion. 7. The sun is the day's eye. 8. She asks the strangers for the spears. 9. The men's bodies are not here. 10. Is he not (**Nis hē**) the child's murderer? 11. Who creates the bodies and the souls of men? 12. Thou withstandest her. 13. He is not writing.

1. The *r* is intrusive in *-groom*, as it is in *cart-r-idge*, *part-r-idge*, *vag-r-ant*, and *hoa-r-se*.

2. The *n* has been appropriated by the article. Cf. *an apron* (< *a napron*), *an auger* (< *a nauger*), *an orange* (< *a norange*), *an umpire* (< *a numpire*).

3. In Mn.E. we say "I request a favor of you"; but in O.E. it was "I request you (dative) of a favor" (genitive). Cf. *Cymbeline*, III, vi, 92: "We'll mannerly demand thee of thy story." See Franz's *Shakespeare-Grammatik*, § 361 (1900).

4. **Scēððan** is conjugated through the present indicative like **fręmman**. See § 129.



## CHAPTER XII.

## Remnants of Other Consonant Declensions.

67.

The nouns belonging here are chiefly masculines and feminines. Their stem ended in a consonant other than **n**. The most important of them may be divided as follows: (1) The *foot* Declension, (2) **r**-Stems, and (3) **nd**-Stems. These declensions are all characterized by the prevalence, wherever possible, of **i**-umlaut in certain cases, the case ending being then dropped.

68.

(1) The nouns belonging to the *foot* Declension exhibit umlaut most consistently in the N.A. plural.

<i>Sing. N.A.</i>	sē fōt ( <i>foot</i> )	sē mōn ( <i>man</i> )	sē tōð ( <i>tooth</i> )	sēo cū ( <i>cow</i> )
<i>Plur. N.A.</i>	fēt	mēn	tēð	cȳ

NOTE.—The dative singular usually has the same form as the N.A. plural. Here belong also **sēo bōc** (*book*), **sēo burg** (*borough*), **sēo gōs** (*goose*), **sēo lūs** (*louse*), and **sēo mūs** (*mouse*), all with unlauded plurals. Mn.E. preserves only six of the *foot* Declension plurals: *feet, men, teeth, geese, lice, and mice*. The *c* in the last two is an artificial spelling, intended to preserve the sound of voiceless *s*. Mn.E. *kine* (= *cy-en*) is a double plural formed after the analogy of weak stems; Burns in *The Twa Dogs* uses *kye*.

No umlaut is possible in **sēo niht** (*night*) and **sē mōnað** (*month*), plural **niht** and **mōnað** (preserved in Mn.E. *twelvemonth* and *fortnight*).

(2) The **r**-Stems contain nouns expressing kinship, and exhibit umlaut of the dative singular.

<i>Sing. N.A.</i>	sē fæder	sē brōðor	sēo mōdor	sēo dohtor	sēo swuster
	( <i>father</i> )	( <i>brother</i> )	( <i>mother</i> )	( <i>daughter</i> )	( <i>sister</i> )
<i>D.</i>	fæder	brēðer	mēder	dēhter	swyster

NOTE.—The N.A. plural is usually the same as the N.A. singular. These umlaut datives are all due to the presence of a former **i**. Cf. Lat. dative singular *patri, frātri, mātri, sorori* (< *\*sosori*), and Greek θυγατρί.

(3) The **nd**-Stems show umlaut both in the N.A. plural and in the dative singular:

<i>Sing. N.A.</i>	sē frēond ( <i>friend</i> )	sē fēond ( <i>enemy</i> )
<i>D.</i>	frīend	fiend
<i>Plur. N.A.</i>	frīend	fiend

NOTE.—Mn.E. *friend* and *fiend* are interesting analogical spellings. When **s** had been added by analogy to the O.E. plurals **frīend** and **fiend**, thus giving the double plurals *friends* and *fiends*, a second singular was formed by dropping the **s**. Thus *friend* and *fiend* displaced the old singulars *frend* and *fend*, both of which occur in the M.E. *Ormulum*, written about the year 1200.

## Summary of O.E. Declensions.

### 69.

A brief, working summary of the O.E. system of declensions may now be made on the basis of gender.

All O.E. nouns are (1) masculine, (2) feminine, or (3) neuter.

(1) The masculines follow the declension of **mūð** (§ 26), except those ending in -**a**, which are declined like **hunta** (§ 64):

<i>Sing. N.A.</i>	mūð	<i>N.</i>	hunta
<i>G.</i>	mūðes	<i>G.D.A.</i>	huntan
<i>D.I.</i>	mūðe	<i>I.</i>	huntan
<i>Plur N.A.</i>	mūðas		huntan
<i>G.</i>	mūða		huntena
<i>D.I.</i>	mūðum		huntum

(2) The short-stemmed neuters follow the declension of **hof** (§ 32); the long-stemmed, that of **bearn** (§ 32):

<i>Sing. N.A.</i>	hof	bearn
<i>G.</i>	hofes	bearnes
<i>D.I.</i>	hofe	bearne
<i>Plur N.A.</i>	hofu	bearn
<i>G.</i>	hofa	bearna
<i>D.I.</i>	hofum	bearnum

(3) The feminines follow the declensions of **giefu** and **wund** (§ 38) (the only difference being in the N. singular), except those ending in -**e**, which follow the declension of **tunge** (§ 64):

<i>Sing. N.</i>	giefu	wund	tunge
<i>G.</i>	giefe	wunde	tungan
<i>D.I.</i>	giefe	wunde	tungan
<i>A.</i>	giefe	wunde	tungan
<i>Plur N.A.</i>	giefa	wunda	tungan
<i>G.</i>	giefa	wunda	tungena
<i>D.I.</i>	giefum	wundum	tungum

### 70.

## VOCABULARY.

ac, but.

**būtan** (with dat.), *except, but, without.*  
**sē Crīst**, *Christ.*  
**sē eorl**, *earl, alderman, warrior.*  
**ðæt Eꝅglaꝅnd**, *England* [Angles' land].  
**faran**, *to go* [fare].  
**findan**, *to find.*  
**sē God**, *God.*  
**hātan**, *to call, name.*  
**sē hlāford**, *lord* [hlāf-weard].  
**mid** (with dat.), *with.*  
**on** (with acc.), *on, against, into.*  
**tō** (with dat.), *to.*  
**uton** (with infin.), *let us.*

NOTE.—O.E. **mōn** (**man**) is frequently used in an indefinite sense for *one, people, they*. It thus takes the place of a passive construction proper: **And man nam þā gebrotu þe þār belifon, twelf cýpan fulle**, *And there were taken up of fragments that remained there twelve baskets full*; but more literally, *And one (or they) took the fragments, etc.*; **Ꝁnd Hæstenes wif Ꝁnd hīs suna twēgen mōn brōhte tō ðæm cyninge**, *And Hæsten's wife and his two sons were brought to the king.*

71.

#### EXERCISES.

I. 1. Mōn hine h̄æt Ælfred. 2. Uton faran on ðæt scip. 3. God is cyninga cyning Ꝁnd hlāforda hlāford. 4. Sē eorl ne giefð giefra his fīend. 5. Ic næs mid his frīend. 6. Sēo mōdor færð mid hiere dehter on ðā burg. 7. Fintst ðū ðæs bōceres bēc? 8. Hē bint ealle (all) ðā deor būtan ðæm wulfum. 9. Ðū eart Crīst, Godes sunu. 10. "Uton bindan ðæs bꝅnan fēt," cwið hē.

II. 1. Christ is the son of God. 2. Let us call him Cædmon. 3. He throws his spear against the door. 4. Thou art not the earl's brother. 5. He will go with his father to England, but I shall remain (abide) here. 6. Gifts are not given to murderers. 7. Who will find the tracks of the animals? 8. They ask their lord for his weapons (§ 65, Note 3).



## CHAPTER XIII.

# PRONOUNS.

## (1) Personal Pronouns.

72.

Paradigms of **ic**, *I*; **ðū**, *thou*. For **hē**, **hēo**, **hit**, see § 53.

<i>Sing. N.</i>	ic	ðū
<i>G.</i>	mīn	ðīn
<i>D.</i>	mē	ðē
<i>A.</i>	mē (mec)	ðē (ðec)
<i>Dual N.</i>	wit ( <i>we two</i> )	git ( <i>ye two</i> )
<i>G.</i>	uncer ( <i>of us two</i> )	incer ( <i>of you two</i> )
<i>D.</i>	unc ( <i>to or for us two</i> )	inc ( <i>to or for you two</i> )
<i>A.</i>	unc ( <i>us two</i> )	inc ( <i>you two</i> )
<i>Plur N.</i>	wē	gē
<i>G.</i>	ūser (ūre)	ēower
<i>D.</i>	ūs	ēow
<i>A.</i>	ūs (ūsic)	ēow (ēowic)

NOTE 1.—The dual number was soon absorbed by the plural. No relic of it now remains. But when two and only two are referred to, the dual is consistently used in O.E. An example occurs in the case of the two blind men (*Matthew ix. 27-31*): **Gemiltsa unc, Davīdes sunu!** *Pity us, (thou) Son of David!* **Sīe inc æfter incrum gelēafan,** *Be it unto you according to your faith.*

NOTE 2.—Mn.E. *ye* (< **gē**), the nominative proper, is fast being displaced by *you* (< **ēow**), the old objective. The distinction is preserved in the King James's version of the Bible: *Ye in me, and I in you* (*John xiv. 20*); but not in Shakespeare and later writers.

## (2) Demonstrative Pronouns.

73.

Paradigm of **ðēs**, **ðēos**, **ðis**, *this*. For the Definite Article as a demonstrative, meaning *that*, see § 28, Note 3.

	<i>Masculine.</i>	<i>Feminine.</i>	<i>Neuter.</i>
<i>Sing. N.</i>	ðēs	ðēos	ðis
<i>G.</i>	ðisses	ðisse	ðisses
<i>D.</i>	ðissum	ðisse	ðissum
<i>A.</i>	ðisne	ðās	ðis
<i>I.</i>	ðȳs	—	ðȳs
	<i>All Genders.</i>		
<i>Plur. N.A.</i>		ðās	
<i>Ꝛ</i>		ðāca	



3.                    3.issu  
 D.                    ðissum

### (3) The Interrogative Pronoun.

74.

Paradigm of **hwā**, **hwæt**, *who*, *what*?

	<i>Masculine.</i>	<i>Neuter.</i>
<i>Sing. N.</i>	hwā	hwæt
<i>G.</i>	hwæs	hwæs
<i>D.</i>	hwæm	hwæm
<i>A.</i>	hwone	hwæt
<i>I.</i>	—	hwȳ

NOTE 1.—The derivative interrogatives, **hwæðer** (< \*hwā-ðer), *which of two?* and **hwilc** (< \*hwā-lic), *which?* are declined as strong adjectives (§§ 79-82).

NOTE 2.—The instrumental case of **hwā** survives in Mn.E. *why* = *on what account*; the instrumental of the definite article is seen in the adverbial *the*: *The sooner, the better* = *by how much sooner, by so much better*.

NOTE 3.—How were the Mn.E. relative pronouns, *who* and *which*, evolved from the O.E. interrogatives? The change began in early West Saxon with **hwæt** used in indirect questions (Wūlfing, *l.c.* § 310, β): **Nū ic wāt eall hwæt ðū woldest**, *Now I know all that thou desiredst*. The direct question was, **Hwæt woldest ðū?** But the presence of **eall** shows that in Alfred's mind **hwæt** was, in the indirect form, more relative than interrogative.

### (4) Relative Pronouns.

75.

O.E. had no relative pronoun proper. It used instead (1) the Indeclinable Particle **ðe**, *who*, *whom*, *which*, *that*, (2) the Definite Article (§ 28), (3) the Definite Article with the Indeclinable Particle, (4) the Indeclinable Particle with a Personal Pronoun.

The Definite Article agrees in gender and number with the antecedent. The case depends upon the construction. *The bird which I have* may, therefore, be:—

- (1) **Sē fugol ðe ic hæbbe;**
- (2) **Sē fugol ðone ic hæbbe;**
- (3) **Sē fugol ðone ðe (= the which) ic hæbbe;**
- (4) **Sē fugol ðe hine ic hæbbe.**

NOTE.—O.E. **ðe** agrees closely in construction with Mn.E. relative *that*: (1) Both are indeclinable. (2) Both refer to animate or inanimate objects. (3) Both may be used with phrasal value: **ðȳ ylcan dæge ðe hī hine tō ðǣm āde beran wyllað**, *On the same day that (= on which) they intend to bear him to the funeral pile.* (4) Neither can be preceded by a preposition.

## (5) Possessive Pronouns.

76.

The Possessive Pronouns are **mīn**, *mine*; **ðīn**, *thine*; **ūre**, *our*; **ēower**, *your*; [**sīn**, *his, her, its*]; **uncer**, *belonging to us two*; **incer**, *belonging to you two*. They are declined as strong adjectives. The genitives of the Third Personal Pronoun, **his**, *his*, **hiere**, *her*, **hiera**, *their*, are indeclinable.

## (6) Indefinite Pronouns.

77.

These are **ǣlc**, *each, every*; **ān**, *a, an, one*; **ǣnig** (< **ān-ig**), *any*; **nǣnig** (< **ne-ǣnig**), *none*; **ōðer**, *other*; **sum**, *one, a certain one*; **swilc**, *such*. They are declined as strong adjectives.

NOTE.—O.E. had three established methods of converting an interrogative pronoun into an indefinite: (1) By prefixing **ge**, (2) by prefixing **ǣg**, (3) by interposing the interrogative between **swā ... swā**: (1) **gehwā**, *each*; **gehwæðer**, *either*; **gehwilc**, *each*; (2) **ǣghwā**, *each*; **ǣghwæðer**, *each*; **ǣghwilc**, *each*; (3) **swā hwā swā**, *whosoever*; **swā hwæðer swā**, *whichever of two*; **swā hwilc swā**, *whosoever*.



## CHAPTER XIV.

### ADJECTIVES, STRONG AND WEAK.

78.

The declension of adjectives conforms in general to the declension of nouns, though a few pronominal inflections have influenced certain cases. Adjectives belong either to (1) the Strong Declension or to (2) the Weak Declension. The Weak Declension is employed when the adjective is preceded by *sē* or *ðēs*, *the*, *that*, or *this*; otherwise, the Strong Declension is employed: **ðā gōdan cyningas**, *the good kings*; **ðēs gōda cyning**, *this good king*; but **gōde cyningas**, *good kings*.

NOTE.—The Weak Declension is also frequently used when the adjective is employed in direct address, or preceded by a possessive pronoun: **Dryhten, ælmihtiga God ... ic bidde ðē for ðīnre miclan mildheortnesse**, *Lord, almighty God, I pray thee, for thy great mercy*.

## (1) Strong Declension of Adjectives.

### (a) Monosyllables.

#### 79.

The strong adjectives are chiefly monosyllabic with long stems: **gōd**, *good*; **eald**, *old*; **lōng**, *long*; **swift**, *swift*. They are declined as follows.

#### 80.

Paradigm of **gōd**, *good*:

	<i>Masculine.</i>	<i>Feminine.</i>	<i>Neuter.</i>
<i>Sing. N.</i>	gōd	gōd	gōd
<i>G.</i>	gōdes	gōdre	gōdes
<i>D.</i>	gōdum	gōdre	gōdum
<i>A.</i>	gōdne	gōde	gōd
<i>I.</i>	gōde	—	gōde
<i>Plur N.A.</i>	gōde	gōda	gōd
<i>G.</i>	gōdra	gōdra	gōdra
<i>D.I.</i>	gōdum	gōdum	gōdum

#### 81.

If the stem is short, **-u** is retained as in **giefu** (§ 39, (1)) and **hofu** (§ 33, (1)). Thus **glæd** (§ 27, Note 1), *glad*, and **til**, *useful*, are inflected:

	<i>Masculine.</i>	<i>Feminine.</i>	<i>Neuter.</i>
<i>Sing. N.</i>	{ glæd til	{ gladu tilu	{ glæd til
<i>Plur N.A.</i>	{ glade tile	{ glada tila	{ gladu tilu

## (b) Polysyllables.

82.

Polysyllables follow the declension of short monosyllables. The most common terminations are **-en, -en; -fæst, -fast; -full, -ful; -lēas, -less; -lic, -ly; -ig, -y; hǣð-en (hǣð = heath), heathen; stede-fæst (stede = place), steadfast; sorg-full (sorg = sorrow), sorrowful; cyst-lēas (cyst = worth), worthless; eorð-lic (eorðe = earth), earthly; blōd-ig (blōd = blood), bloody.** The present and past participles, when inflected and not as weak adjectives, may be classed with the polysyllabic adjectives, their inflection being the same.

Syncopation occurs as in **a**-stems (§ 27, (4)). Thus **hālig, holy, bliðe, blithe, berende, bearing, geboren, born,** are thus inflected:

	<i>Masculine.</i>	<i>Feminine.</i>	<i>Neuter.</i>
<i>Sing. N.</i>	hālig	hālgu	hālig
	bliðe	bliðu	bliðe
	berende	berende	berende
	geboren	geborenu	geboren
<i>Plur N.A.</i>	hālge	hālga	hālgu
	bliðe	bliða	bliðu
	berende	berenda	berendu
	geborene	geborena	geborenu

## (2) Weak Declension of Adjectives.

83.

The Weak Declension of adjectives, whether monosyllabic or polysyllabic, does not differ from the Weak Declension of nouns, except that **-ena** of the genitive plural is usually replaced by **-ra** of the strong adjectives.

84.

	<i>Masculine.</i>	<i>Feminine.</i>	<i>Neuter.</i>
<i>Sing. N.</i>	gōda	gōde	gōde
G.	gōdan	gōdan	gōdan
<i>D.I.</i>	gōdan	gōdan	gōdan
A.	gōdan	gōdan	gōde
	<i>All Genders.</i>		
<i>Plur. N.A.</i>		gōdan	
G.		gōdra (gōdena)	

D.I.

gōdum

85.

#### RULE OF SYNTAX.

*Adjectives agree with their nouns in gender, number, and case; but participles, when used predicatively, may remain uninflected (§ 139, § 140).*

86.

#### VOCABULARY.

**dēad**, *dead*.

**eall**, *all*.

**hāl**, <sup>1</sup> *whole, hale*.

**heard**, *hard*.

**ðæt hors**, *horse*.

**lēof**, *dear* [as *lief*].

**lȳtel**, *little*.

**micel**, *great, large*.

**mōnig**, *many*.

**niman**, *to take* [nimble, numb].

**nīwe**, *new*.

**rīce**, *rich, powerful*.

**sōð**, *true* [sooth-sayer].

**stælwierðe**, <sup>2</sup> *serviceable* [stalwart].

**swīðe**, *very*.

**sē tūn**, *town, village*.

**sē ðegn**, *servant, thane, warrior*.

**ðæt ðing**, *thing*.

**sē weg**, *way*.

**wīs**, *wise*.

**wið** (with acc.), *against*, in a hostile sense [with-stand].

**sē ilca**, *the same* [of that ilk].

87.

#### EXERCISES.

I. 1. Ðās scipu ne sind swīðe swift, ac hīe sind swīðe stælwierðu. 2. Sēo gōde cwēn giefð ælcum ðegne mōniga giefa. 3. Ðēs wīsa cyning hæfð mōnige micele tūnas on his rīce. 4. Nāēnig mōn is wīs on eallum ðingum. 5. Ðȳ ilcan dæge (§ 98, (2)) mōn fōnd (found) ðone ðegn ðe mīnes wines bēc hæfde. 6. Ealle ðā secgas ðā ðe swift hors habbað rīdað wið ðone bōnan. 7. Ðīne fiend sind mīne frīend. 8. Sē micela stān ðone ðe ic on mīnum hōndum hæbbe is swīðe heard. 9. Hīe sceððað ðāem ealdum horsum. 10. Uton niman ðās tilan giefa ōnd hīe beran tō ūrum lēofum bearnum.

II. 1. These holy men are wise and good. 2. Are the little children very dear to the servants (dat. without **tō**)? 3. Gifts are not given (§ 70, Note 1) to rich men. 4. All the horses that are in the king's fields are swift. 5. These stones are very large and hard. 6. He takes the dead man's spear and fights against the large army. 7. This new house has many doors. 8. My ways are not your ways. 9. Whosoever chooses me, him I also (**ēac**) choose. 10. Every man has many friends that are not wise.

1. **Hālig**, *holy*, contains, of course, the same root. "I find," says Carlyle, "that you could not get any better definition of what 'holy' really is than 'healthy—completely healthy.'"

2. This word has been much discussed. The older etymologists explained it as meaning *worth stealing*. A more improbable conjecture is that it means *worth a stall* or *place*. It is used of ships in the *Anglo-Saxon Chronicle*. As applied to men, Skeat thinks it meant *good* or *worthy at stealing*; but the etymology is still unsettled.



## CHAPTER XV.

### NUMERALS.

88.

Numerals are either (a) Cardinal, expressing pure number, *one, two, three*; or (b) Ordinal, expressing rank or succession, *first, second, third*.

## (a) Cardinals.

89.

The Cardinals fall into the three following syntactic groups:

### GROUP I.

1. ān
2. twēgen [twain]
3. ðrīe

These numerals are inflected adjectives. **Ān**, *one, an, a*, being a long stemmed monosyllable, is declined like **gōd** (§ 80). The weak form, **āna**, means *alone*.

**Twēgen** and **ðrīe**, which have no singular, are thus declined:

	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
<i>Plur. N.A.</i>	twēgen	twā	twā (tū)	ðrīe	ðrēo	ðrēo
<i>G.</i>	twēgra	twēgra	twēgra	ðrēora	ðrēora	ðrēora
<i>D.</i>	{ twæm (twām)	{ twæm (twām)	{ twæm (twām)	ðrīm	ðrīm	ðrīm

90.

### GROUP II.

4. fēower
5. fīf
6. siex
7. seofon
8. eahta
9. nigon
10. tīen
11. ęndlefan
12. twelf
13. ðrēotīene
14. fēowertīene
15. fiftīene
16. siextīene
17. sefontīene
18. eahtatīene
19. nigontīene

These words are used chiefly as uninflected adjectives: **on gewitscipe ðrēora oþpe fēower bisceopa**, *on testimony of three or four bishops*; **on siex dagum**, *in six days*; **ān nǣdre ðe hæfde nigon hēafdu**, *a serpent which had nine heads*;

**æðeling eahtatīene wintra**, *a prince of eighteen winters.*

91.

GROUP III.

- 20. twēntig
- 21. ān ƿnd twēntig
- 30. ðrītig
- 40. fēowertig
- 50. fīftig
- 60. siextig
- 70. hundseofontig
- 80. hundeahtatig
- 90. hundnigontig
- 100. hund
- 200. twā hund
- 1000. ðūsend
- 2000. twā ðūsend

All these numbers are employed as neuter singular nouns, and are followed by the genitive plural: **Næfde hē þēah mā ðonne twēntig hrȳðera, and twēntig scēapa, and twēntig swȳna**, *He did not have, however, more than twenty (of) cattle, and twenty (of) sheep, and twenty (of) swine*; **Hīe hæfdon hundeahtatig scīpa**, *They had eighty ships*; **twā hund mīla brād**, *two hundred miles broad*; **ðæer wæeron seofon hund gūðfanena genumen**, *there were seven hundred standards captured*; **ān ðūsend mōnna**, *a thousand men*; **Hannibales folces wæs twā ðūsend ofslagen**, *Of Hannibal's men there were two thousand slain*; **Hīe ācuron ęndlefan ðūsend mōnna**, *They chose eleven thousand men.*

NOTE 1.—Group III is rarely inflected. Almost the only inflectional endings that are added are (1) -**es**, a genitive singular termination for the numerals in -**tig**, and (2) -**e**, a dative singular for **hund**. (1) The first is confined to adjectives expressing extent of space or time, as, **eald**, *old*; **brād**, *broad*; **hēah**, *high*; and **lōng**, *long*: **ðæt is ðrītiges mīla lōng**, *that is thirty miles long*; **Hē wæs ðrītiges gēara eald**, *He was thirty years old*. (2) The second is employed after **mid**: **mid twāem hunde scīpa**, *with two hundred ships*; **mid ðrīm hunde mōnna**, *with three hundred men*; **Ðæer wearð ... Regulus gefangen mid V hunde mōnna**, *There was Regulus captured with five hundred men.*

The statement made in nearly all the grammars that **hund** occurs as a nominative and accusative plural is without foundation.

NOTE 2.—Many numerals, otherwise indeclinable, are used in the genitive plural with the indefinite pronoun **sum**, which then means *one of* a certain number. In this peculiar construction, the numeral always precedes **sum**: **fēowera sum**, *one of four (= with three others)*; **Hē sæde þæt hē syxa sum ofslōge syxtig**, *He said that he, with five others, slew sixty (whales)*; **Hē wæs fēowertigra sum**, *He was one of forty.*

NOTE 3.—These are the most common constructions with the Cardinals. The forms in -**tig** have only recently been investigated. A study of Wūlfing's citations shows that Alfred occasionally uses the



forms in **-tig** (1) as adjectives with plural inflections: **mid XXXgum cyningum**, *with thirty kings*; and (2) as nouns with plural inflections: **æfter siextigum daga**, *after sixty days*. But both constructions are rare.

## (b) Ordinals.

92.

The Ordinals, except the first two, are formed from the Cardinals. They are:

1. forma, æresta, fyrsta
2. oðer, æfterra
3. ðridda
4. fēorða
5. fīfta
6. siexta
7. seofoda
8. eahtoða
9. nigoða
10. tēoða
11. endlefta
12. twelfta
13. ðrēotēoða
14. fēowertēoða
15. fīftēoða  
etc.
20. twēntigoða
21. ān ƿnd twēntigoða
30. ðrītigoða  
etc.

NOTE.—There are no Ordinals corresponding to **hund** and **ðūsend**.

With the exception of **oðer** (§ 77), all the Ordinals are declined as Weak Adjectives; the article, however, as in Mn.E., is frequently omitted: **Brūtus wæs sē forma consul**, *Brutus was the first consul*; **Hēr ęndað sēo æreste bōc, ƿnd onginneð sēo oðer**, *Here the first book ends, and the second begins*; **ðy fīftan dæge**, *on the fifth day*; **on ðæm tēoðan gēare hiera gewinnes**, *in the tenth year of their strife*; **Hēo wæs twelfte**, *She was twelfth*; **Sē wæs fēorða frōm Augusto**, *He was fourth from Augustus*.



## CHAPTER XVI.

## ADVERBS, PREPOSITIONS, AND CONJUNCTIONS.

### Adverbs.

93.

(1) Adverbs are formed by adding **-e** or **-lice** to the corresponding adjectives: **sōð**, *true*; **sōðe** or **sōðlice**, *truly*; **earmlīc**, *wretched*; **earmlīce**, *wretchedly*; **wīd**, *wide*; **wīde**, *widely*; **micel**, *great*; **micle** (**micele**), *greatly, much*.

(2) The terminations **-e** and **-lice** are replaced in some adverbs by **-(l)unga** or **-(l)inga**: **eallunga**, *entirely*; **fǣringa**, *suddenly*; **grundlunga**, *from the ground, completely*.

NOTE 1.—In Mn.E. *headlong*, *darkling*, and *groveling*, originally adverbs, we have survivals of these endings.

(3) The genitive case is frequently used adverbially: **sūðewardes**, *southwards*; **ealles**, *altogether, entirely*; **dæg**, *by day*; **nihtes**, *by night*; **ðæs**, *from that time, afterwards*. Cf. **hys** (= **his**) **weges** in **Ðonne rīdeð ælc hys weg**, *Then rides each his way*.

NOTE 2.—The adverbial genitive is abundantly preserved in Mn.E. *Always*, *crossways*, *sideways*, *needs* (= *necessarily*), *sometimes*, etc., are not plurals, but old genitive singulars. The same construction is seen in *of course*, *of a truth*, *of an evening*, *of old*, *of late*, and similar phrases.

(4) Dative and instrumental plurals may be used as adverbs: **hwīlum**, *at times, sometimes* [whilom]; **stundum** (**stund** = *period*), *from time to time*; **miclum**, *greatly*. Especially common is the suffix **-māelum** (**māel** = *time, measure* [meal]), preserved adverbially in Mn.E. *piecemeal*: **dropmāelum**, *drop by drop*; **styccemāelum** (**stycce** = *piece*), *piecemeal, here and there*.

(5) The suffix **-an** usually denotes motion from:

<b>hēr</b> , <i>here</i> .	<b>hider</b> , <i>hither</i> .	<b>heonan</b> , <i>hence</i> .
<b>ðær</b> , <i>there</i> .	<b>ðider</b> , <i>thither</i> .	<b>ðonan</b> , <i>thence</i> .
<b>hwær</b> , <i>where?</i>	<b>hwider</b> , <i>whither?</i>	<b>hwonan</b> , <i>whence?</i>
		<b>norðan</b> , <i>from the north</i> .
		<b>ēastan</b> , <i>from the east</i> .
		<b>hindan</b> , <i>from behind</i> .
		<b>feorran</b> , <i>from far</i> .
		<b>ūtan</b> , <i>from without</i> .

(6) The adverb **rihte** (**riht** = *right, straight*) denotes *motion toward* in **norðrihte**,

northward, due north; **ēastrihte**, due east; **sūðrihte**, due south; **westrihte**, due west.

## Prepositions.

### 94.

The nominative is the only case in O.E. that is never governed by a preposition. Of the other cases, the dative and accusative occur most frequently with prepositions.

(1) The prepositions that are most frequently found with the dative are:

**æfter**, *after*.  
**æt**, *at*.  
**be (bī)**, *by, near, about*.  
**betwēonan (betuh)**, *between*.  
**būtan (būton)**, *except*.  
**for**, *for*.  
**frōm (fram)**, *from, by*.  
**mid**, *with*.  
**of**, *of, from*.  
**tō**, *to*.  
**tōforan**, *before*.  
**tōweard**, *toward*.

(2) The following prepositions require the accusative:

**geond**, *throughout* [be-yond].  
**ofer**, *over, upon*.  
**oð**, *until, up to*.  
**ðurh**, *through*.  
**ymbe**, *about, around* [um-while, ember-days].

(3) The preposition **on** (rarely **in**), meaning *into*, is usually followed by the accusative; but meaning *in, on, or during*, it takes the dative or instrumental. The preposition **wið**, meaning *toward*, may be followed by the genitive, dative, or accusative; but meaning *against*, and implying *motion* or *hostility*, the accusative is more common.

(4) The following phrases are used prepositionally with the dative:

**be norðan**, *north of*.  
**be ēastan**, *east of*.  
**be sūðan**, *south of*.  
**be westan**, *west of*.  
**tō ēacan**, *in addition to*.

**on emnlange** (*efn-lang* = *evenly long*), *along*.  
**tō emnes**, *along*.

(5) Prepositions regularly precede the noun or pronoun that they introduce; but by their adverbial nature they are sometimes drawn in front of the verb: **And him wæs mycel menegu tō gegaderod**, *And there was gathered unto him a great multitude*. In relative clauses introduced by **ðe**, the preceding position is very common: **sēo scīr ... ðe hē on būde**, *the district, ... which he dwelt in* (= *which he in-habited*); **Hē wæs swyðe spēdig man on ðāem æhtum ðe hiera spēda on bēoð**, *He was a very rich man in those possessions which their riches consist in*; **nȳhst ðāem tūne ðe sē dēada man on līð**, *nearest the town that the dead man lies in*.

## Conjunctions.

95.

(1) The most frequently occurring conjunctions are:

**ac**, *but*.  
**æ̅r**, *before, ere*.  
**būtan (būton)**, *except that, unless*.  
**ēac**, *also [eke]*.  
**for ðāem**,  
**for ðāem ðe**,  
**for ðon**,  
**for ðon ðe**,  
**for ðȳ**, *therefore*.  
**gif**, *if*.  
**hwæðer**, *whether*.  
**o̅nd (and)**, *and*.  
**oððe**, *or*.  
**ðæt**, *that, so that*.  
**ðēah**, *though, however*.

} *because*.

(2) The correlative conjunctions are:

**æ̅gðer ge . . . . ge**, *both . . . . and*.  
**æ̅gðer . . . . . o̅ðer**  
**o̅ððe . . . . . o̅ððe** } *either . . . . . or*.  
**nē . . . . . nē**, *neither . . . . . nor*.  
**sam . . . . . sam**, *whether . . . . . or*.  
**swā . . . . . swā** { *the . . . . . the*.  
*as . . . . . as*.  
**ðā . . . . . ðā**  
**ðonne . . . . . ðonne** } *when . . . . . then*.



## CHAPTER XVII.

### COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES AND ADVERBS.

#### Adjectives.

96.

(1) Adjectives are regularly compared by adding **-ra** for the comparative, and **-ost** (rarely **-est**) for the superlative:

<i>Positive.</i>	<i>Comparative.</i>	<i>Superlative.</i>
<b>earm</b> , <i>poor</i>	<b>earmra</b>	<b>earmost</b>
<b>rīce</b> , <i>rich</i>	<b>rīcra</b>	<b>rīcost</b>
<b>smæl</b> , <i>narrow</i>	<b>smælra</b>	<b>smalost</b>
<b>brād</b> , <i>broad</i>	<b>brādra</b> ( <b>brædra</b> )	<b>brādost</b>
<b>swift</b> , <i>swift</i>	<b>swiftra</b>	<b>swiftost</b>

(2) Forms with **i**-umlaut usually have superlative in **-est**:

<i>Positive.</i>	<i>Comparative.</i>	<i>Superlative.</i>
<b>eald</b> , <i>old</i>	<b>ieldra</b>	<b>ieldest</b>
<b>lōng</b> , <i>long</i>	<b>lēngra</b>	<b>lēngest</b>
<b>strōng</b> , <i>strong</i>	<b>strengra</b>	<b>strengest</b>
<b>geong</b> , <i>young</i>	<b>giengra</b>	<b>giengest</b>
<b>hēah</b> , <i>high</i>	<b>hīerra</b>	<b>hīehst</b>

(3) The following adjectives are compared irregularly:

<i>Positive.</i>	<i>Comparative.</i>	<i>Superlative.</i>
<b>gōd</b> , <i>good</i>	<b>bętra</b>	<b>bętst</b>
<b>lýtēl</b> , <i>little, small</i>	<b>lāēssa</b>	<b>lāēst</b>
<b>micel</b> , <i>great, much</i>	<b>māra</b>	<b>māēst</b>
<b>yfel</b> , <i>bad</i>	<b>wiersa</b>	<b>wierst</b>

(4) The positive is sometimes supplied by an adverb:

<i>Positive.</i>	<i>Comparative.</i>	<i>Superlative.</i>
<b>feor</b> , <i>far</i>	<b>fierra</b>	<b>fierrest</b>
<b>nēah</b> , <i>near</i>	<b>nēarra</b>	<b>nīehst</b>
<b>āer</b> , <i>before</i>	<b>āerra</b> , <i>former</i>	<b>āerest</b> , <i>first</i>

(5) The comparatives all follow the Weak Declension. The superlatives, when

preceded by the definite article, are weak; but when used predicatively they are frequently strong: **sē lǣsta dǣl**, *the least part*; **Ðonne cymeð sē man sē ðæt swiftoste hors hafað tō ðǣm ærestan dæle and tō ðǣm mǣstan**, *Then comes the man that has the swiftest horse to the first part and to the largest*. But, **ðæt bȳne land is ēasteward brādost** (not **brādoste**), *the cultivated land is broadest eastward*; and (hit) **bið ealra wyrta mǣst**, *and it is largest of all herbs*; **Ac hyra (= hiera) ār is mǣst on ðǣm gafole ðe ðā Finnas him gyldað**, *But their income is greatest in the tribute that the Fins pay them*.

(6) The comparative is usually followed by **ðonne** and the nominative case: **Sē hwæl bið micle lǣssa ðonne oðre hwalas**, *That whale is much smaller than other whales*; **Ðā wunda ðæs mōdes beoð dīgelran ðonne ðā wunda ðæs lichaman**. *The wounds of the mind are more secret than the wounds of the body*.

But when **ðonne** is omitted, the comparative is followed by the dative: **Ūre Āliesend, ðe māra is onð mǣrra eallum gesceaftum**, *Our Redeemer, who is greater and more glorious than all created things*; **nē ongeat hē nō hiene selfne beþran oðrum gōdum monnum**, *nor did he consider himself better than other good men*.

## Adverbs.

97.

(1) Adverbs are regularly compared by adding **-or** for the comparative and **-ost** (rarely **-est**) for the superlative:

Positive.	Comparative.	Superlative.
<b>georne</b> , <i>willingly</i>	<b>geornor</b>	<b>geornost</b>
<b>swīðe</b> , <i>very, severely</i>	<b>swīðor</b> , <i>more</i>	<b>swīðost</b> , <i>most, chiefly</i>
<b>ǣr</b> , <i>before</i>	<b>ǣror</b> , <i>formerly</i>	<b>ǣrest</b> , <i>first</i>
<b>norð</b> , <i>northwards</i>	<b>norðor</b>	<b>norðmest</b> <sup>1</sup>

(2) The comparatives of a few adverbs may be found by dropping **-ra** of the corresponding adjective form:

Positive.	Comparative.	Superlative.
<b>lōnge</b> , <i>long</i>	<b>lēng</b>	<b>lēngest</b>
<b>micle</b> , <i>much</i>	<b>mā</b>	<b>mǣst</b>
<b>wel</b> , <i>well</i>	<b>bēt</b>	<b>bētst</b>

## EXPRESSIONS OF TIME.

98.

(1) Duration of time and extent of space are usually expressed by the accusative case: **Ealle ðā hwīle ðe ðæt līc bið inne**, *All the time that the body is within*; **twēgen dagas**, *for two days*; **ealne weg**, *all the way, always*.

(2) Time when is more often expressed by the instrumental case when no preposition is used: **ðȳ ilcan dæge**, *the same day*; **ǣlce gēare**, *each year*; **ðȳ gēare**, *that year*; **ǣlce dæge**, *each day*.

(3) Time or space within which is expressed by **on** and the dative: **on sumera**, *in summer*; **on wintra**, *in winter*; **on fīf dagum**, *in five days*; **on fīf mīlum**, *in five miles*; **on ðissum gēare**, *in this year*; **on ðāem tīman**, *in those times*. Sometimes by the genitive without a preceding preposition: **ðæs gēares**, *in that year*.

99.

### VOCABULARY.

**ðæt gefylce [folc]**, *troop, division*.

**ðæt lōnd (land)**, *land*.

**sēo mīl**, *mile*.

**ōðer ... oðer**, *the one ... the other; the former ... the latter*.

**sē sige**, *victory*.

**sige<sup>2</sup> habban**, *to win (the) victory*.

**sprecan**, *to speak*.

**ðæt swīn (swȳn)**, *swine, hog*.

**wēste**, *waste*.

100.

### EXERCISES.

I. 1. Hē hæfð ðrēo swīðe swift hors. 2. Ic hæbbe nigontīene scēap ōnd mā ðonne twēntig swīna. 3. Sēo gōde cwēn cīest twā hund mōnna. 4. Uton feohtan wið ðā Dene mid ðrīm hunde scipa. 5. Ōnd hīe wæron on twāem gefylcum: on oðrum wæs<sup>3</sup> Bāchsecg ōnd Halfdene ðā hāðnan cyningas, ōnd on oðrum wæron ðā eorlas. 6. Ðū spricst sōðlice. 7. Ðonne rīt ǣlc mōn his weges. 8. Æfter mōnigum dagum, hæfde Ælfred cyning<sup>4</sup> sige. 9. Ðis lōnd is wēste

styccemǣlum. 10. Ðēs feld is fiftiges mīla brād. 11. Ælfred cyning hæfde mōnige frīend, for ðǣm ðe hē wæs ægðer ge wīs ge gōd. 12. Ðā hwalas, ðe ðū ymbe spricst, sind micle læssan oðrum hwalum. 13. Hēo is ieldre ðonne hiere swuster, ac mīn brōðor is ieldra ðonne hēo. 14. Wē cumað tō ðǣm tūne ælce gēare. 15. Ðā men ðe ðā swiftostan hors hǣfdon wǣron mid ðǣm Denum fēower dagas.

II. 1. Our army (**werod**) was in two divisions: one was large, the other was small. 2. The richest men in the kingdom have more (**mā**) than thirty ships. 3. He was much wiser than his brother. 4. He fights against the Northumbrians with two ships. 5. After three years King Alfred gained the victory. 6. Whosoever chooses these gifts, chooses well. 7. This man’s son is both wiser and better than his father. 8. When the king rides, then ride his thanes also. 9. The richest men are not always (**ā**) the wisest men.

1. This is really a double superlative, **m** being itself an old superlative suffix. Cf. Latin *opti-m-us*. In Mn.E. *northmost* and *hindmost*, *-m-est* has been confused with *-most*, with which etymologically it has nothing to do.

2. **Sige** usually, but not invariably, precedes **habban**.

3. See p. 100, [note on gefeaht](#).

4. The proper noun comes first in appositive expressions: **Ælfred cyning**, **Sidroc eorl**, **Hēahmund bisceop**.



## CHAPTER XVIII.

### STRONG VERBS: CLASS I. (See § 17.)

#### Syntax of Moods.

#### 101.

Of the three hundred simple verbs belonging to the O.E. Strong Conjugation, it



is estimated <sup>1</sup> that seventy-eight have preserved their strong inflections in Mn.E., that eighty-eight have become weak, and that the remaining one hundred and thirty-four have entirely disappeared, their places being taken in most cases by verbs of Latin origin introduced through the Norman-French.

NOTE.—Only the simple or primitive verbs, not the compound forms, are here taken into consideration. The proportionate loss, therefore, is really much greater. O.E. abounded in formative prefixes. “Thus from the Anglo-Saxon **flōwan**, *to flow*, ten new compounds were formed by the addition of various prefixes, of which ten, only one, **oferflōwan**, *to overflow*, survives with us. In a similar manner, from the verb **sittan**, *to sit*, thirteen new verbs were formed, of which not a single one is to be found to-day.” Lounsbury, *ib.* Part I, p. 107.

102.

### Class I: The “Drive” Conjugation.

Vowel Succession: **ī, ā, i, i.**

INFINITIVE.	PRETERIT SING.	PRETERIT PLUR.	PAST PART.
<b>Drīf-an</b>	<b>drāf</b>	<b>drif-on</b>	<b>gedrif-en</b> , <i>to drive.</i>
<b>Indicative.</b>		<b>Subjunctive.</b>	
PRESENT.		PRESENT.	
<i>Sing.</i> 1. Ic drīf-e	<i>Sing.</i> 1. Ic	} drīf-e	
2. ðū drīf-st (drīf-est)	2. ðū		
3. hē drīf-ð (drīf-eð)	3. hē		
<i>Plur.</i> 1. wē } (drīf-að)	<i>Plur.</i> 1. wē } drīf-en	} drīf-en	
2. gē }	2. gē }		
3. hīe }	3. hīe }		
PRETERIT.		PRETERIT.	
<i>Sing.</i> 1. Ic drāf	<i>Sing.</i> 1. Ic	} drif-e	
2. ðū drif-e	2. ðū		
3. hē drāf	3. hē		
<i>Plur.</i> 1. wē } drif-on	<i>Plur.</i> 1. wē } drif-en	} drif-en	
2. gē }	2. gē }		
3. hīe }	3. hīe }		
<b>Imperative.</b>	<b>Infinitive.</b>	<b>Present Participle.</b>	
<i>Sing.</i> 2. drīf	drīf-an	drīf-ende	
<i>Plur.</i> 1. drīf-an			
2. drīf-að	<b>Gerund.</b>	<b>Past Participle.</b>	
	tō drīf-anne (-enne)	gedrif-en	

### Tense Formation of Strong Verbs.

### 103.

(1) It will be seen from the conjugation of **drīfan** that the *present stem* in all strong verbs is used throughout the present indicative, the present subjunctive, the imperative, the infinitive, the gerund, and the present participle. More than half of the endings, therefore, of the Strong Conjugation are added directly to the present stem.

(2) That the *preterit singular stem* is used in only two forms of the verb, the 1st and 3d persons singular of the preterit indicative: **Ic drāf, hē drāf.**

(3) That the *preterit plural stem* is used in the preterit plural indicative, in the second person of the preterit singular indicative, and in the singular and plural of the preterit subjunctive.

(4) That the *stem of the past participle (gedrif-)* is used for no other form.

## Syntax of the Verb.

### 104.

The Indicative Mood<sup>2</sup> represents the predicate *as a reality*. It is used both in independent and in dependent clauses, its function in O.E. corresponding with its function in Mn.E.

### 105.

The Subjunctive Mood represents the predicate *as an idea*.<sup>3</sup> It is of far more frequent occurrence in O.E. than in Mn.E.

1. When used in independent clauses it denotes desire, command, or entreaty, and usually precedes its subject: **Sīe ðīn nama gehālgod, Hallowed be Thy name; Ne swerigen gē, Do not swear.**

2. In dependent clauses it denotes uncertainty, possibility, or mere futurity.<sup>4</sup> (a) Concessive clauses (introduced by **ðēah, though**) and (b) temporal clauses (introduced by **ǣr, ǣr ðǣm ðe, before**) are rarely found with any other mood than the subjunctive. The subjunctive is also regularly used in Alfredian prose (c) after verbs of saying, even when no suggestion of doubt or discredit attaches to the narration.<sup>5</sup> “Whether the statement refer to a fact or not, whether the

subject-matter be vouched for by the reporter, as regards its objective reality and truth, the subjunctive does not tell. It simply represents a statement as reported”<sup>6</sup>: **ðēah man āseſte twēgen fāetels full ealað oððe wāteres**, *though one set two vessels full of ale or water*; **āer ðāem ðe hit eall forhergod wāere**, *before it was all ravaged*; **Hē sāede ðæt Norðmanna land wāere swyðe lang and swyðe smael**, *He said that the Norwegians’ land was very long and very narrow*.

## 106.

The Imperative is the mood of command or intercession: **Iōhannes, cum tō mē**, *John, come to me*; **And forgyf ūs ūre gyltas**, *And forgive us our trespasses*; **Ne drif ūs fram ðē**, *Do not drive us from thee*.

## 107.

(1) The Infinitive and Participles are used chiefly in verb-phrases (§§ 138-141); but apart from this function, the Infinitive, being a neuter noun, may serve as the subject or direct object of a verb. **Hātan** (*to command, bid*), **lāetan** (*to let, permit*), and **onginnan** (*to begin*) are regularly followed by the Infinitive: **Hine rīdan lyste**, *To ride pleased him*; **Hēt ðā bāere seſtan**, *He bade set down the bier*; <sup>7</sup> **Lāetað ðā lýtlingas tō mē cuman**, *Let the little ones come to me*; **ðā ongann hē sprecan**, *then began he to speak*.

(2) The Participles may be used independently in the dative absolute construction (an imitation of the Latin ablative absolute), usually for the expression of time: <sup>8</sup> **Him ðā gýt sprecendum**, *While he was yet speaking*; **gefylledum dagum**, *the days having been fulfilled*.

## 108.

The Gerund, or Gerundial Infinitive, is used:

(1) To express purpose: **Ūt ēode sē sāwere his sāed tō sāwenne**, *Out went the sower his seed to sow*.

(2) To expand or determine the meaning of a noun or adjective: **Sýmōn, ic hæbbe ðē tō seſgenne sum ðing**, *Simon, I have something to say to thee*; **Hit is scōndlic ymb swelc tō sprecanne**, *It is shameful to speak about such things*.

(3) After **bēon** (**wesan**) to denote duty or necessity: **Hwæt is nū mā ymbe ðis tō sprecanne**, *What more is there now to say about this?* **ðonne is tō geðencenne hwaet Crīst self cwæð**, *then it behooves to bethink what Christ himself said.*

NOTE.—The Gerund is simply the dative case of the Infinitive after **tō**. It began very early to supplant the simple Infinitive; hence the use of *to* with the Infinitive in Mn.E. As late as the Elizabethan age the Gerund sometimes replaced the Infinitive even after the auxiliary verbs:

“Some pagan shore,  
Where these two Christian armies *might combine*  
The blood of malice in a vein of league,  
And not *to spend* it so unneighbourly.”

—*King John*, V, II, 39.

NOTE.—The Gerund is simply the *When to* lost the meaning of purpose and came to be considered as a merely formal prefix, *for* was used to supplement the purpose element: *What went ye out for to see?*<sup>9</sup>

1. Lounsbury, *English Language*, Part II, § 241.
2. Usage sanctions *mood*, but the better spelling would be *mode*. It is from the Lat. *modus*, whereas *mood* (= *temper*) is O.E. *mōd*.
3. Gildersleeve's *Latin Grammar*, § 255.
4. Thus when Alfred writes that an event took place *before* the founding of Rome, he uses the subjunctive: **ǣr ðǣm ðe Rōmeburh getimbrod wǣre** = *before Rome were founded*; but, **ǣfter ðǣm ðe Rōmeburh getimbrod wæs** = *after Rome was founded*.
5. “By the time of Ælfric, however, the levelling influence of the indicative [after verbs of saying] has made considerable progress.”—Gorrell, *Indirect Discourse in Anglo-Saxon* (Dissertation, 1895), p. 101.
6. Hotz, *On the Use of the Subjunctive Mood in Anglo-Saxon* (Zürich, 1882).
7. Not, *He commanded the bier to be set down*. The Mn.E. passive in such sentences is a loss both in force and directness.
8. Callaway, *The Absolute Participle in Anglo-Saxon* (Dissertation, 1889), p. 19.
9. This is not the place to discuss the Gerund in Mn.E., the so-called “infinitive in *-ing*.” The whole subject has been befogged for the lack of an accepted nomenclature, one that shall do violence neither to grammar nor to history.



## CHAPTER XIX.

### STRONG VERBS: CLASSES II AND III.

109.

#### Class II: The “Choose” Conjugation.

Vowel Succession: **ēo, ēa, u, o.**

INFINITIVE. <sup>1</sup>    PRET. SING.    PRET. PLUR. <sup>2</sup>    PAST PART. <sup>2</sup>  
**cēos-an,**        **cēas,**        **cur-on**        **gecor-en,** *to choose.*

**Indicative.**

**Subjunctive.**

PRESENT.

PRESENT.

<p><i>Sing.</i> 1. Ic cēos-e          2. đū cīest (cēos-est)          3. hē cīest (cēos-eđ)</p> <p><i>Plur.</i> 1. wē }          2. gē } cēos-ađ          3. hīe }</p>	<p><i>Sing.</i> 1. Ic }          2. đū } cēos-e          3. hē }</p> <p><i>Plur.</i> 1. wē }          2. gē } cēos-en          3. hīe }</p>
--	---

PRETERIT.

PRETERIT.

<p><i>Sing.</i> 1. Ic cēas          2. đū cur-e          3. hē cēas</p> <p><i>Plur.</i> 1. wē }          2. gē } cur-on          3. hīe }</p>	<p><i>Sing.</i> 1. Ic }          2. đū } cur-e          3. hē }</p> <p><i>Plur.</i> 1. wē }          2. gē } cur-en          3. hīe }</p>
---	---

**Imperative.**

**Infinitive.**

**Present Participle.**

<i>Sing.</i> 2. cēos	cēos-an	cēos-ende
<i>Plur.</i> 1. cēos-an		
2. cēos-ađ		

**Gerund.**

**Past Participle.**

tō cēos-anne (-enne)        gecor-en

110.

#### Class III: The “Bind” Conjugation.

Vowel Succession:  $\left. \begin{matrix} \mathbf{i} \\ \mathbf{e} \end{matrix} \right\}, \mathbf{a}, \mathbf{u}, \left. \begin{matrix} \mathbf{u} \\ \mathbf{o} \end{matrix} \right\}.$

The present stem ends in **m, n, l, r,** or **h,** + one or more consonants:

**m:** belimp-an,  $\left\{ \begin{matrix} \mathbf{bel\o{m}p} \\ \mathbf{belamp} \end{matrix} \right\},$  belump-on, belump-en, *to belong.*

<b>n:</b>	<b>bind-an,</b>	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \mathbf{b}\mathbf{\bar{o}}\mathbf{nd} \\ \mathbf{band} \end{array} \right\}$	, <b>bund-on,</b>	<b>gebund-en,</b>	<i>to bind.</i>
<b>l:</b>	<b>help-an,</b>	<b>healp,</b>	<b>hulp-on,</b>	<b>geholp-en,</b>	<i>to help.</i>
<b>r:</b>	<b>weorð-an,</b>	<b>wearð,</b>	<b>wurd-on,</b>	<b>geword-en,</b>	<i>to become.</i>
<b>h:</b>	<b>gefeht-an,</b>	<b>gefeht,</b>	<b>gefuht-on,</b>	<b>gefoht-en,</b>	<i>to fight.</i>

NOTE 1.—If the present stem ends in a nasal (**m, n**) + a consonant, the past participle retains the **u** of the pret. plur.; but if the present stem ends in a liquid (**l, r**) or **h**, + a consonant, the past participle has **o** instead of **u**.

NOTE 2.—Why do we not find **\*halp**, **\*warð**, and **\*faht** in the pret. sing.? Because **a** before **l, r**, or **h**, + a consonant, underwent “breaking” to **ea**. Breaking also changes every **e** followed by **r** or **h**, + a consonant, to **eo**: **weorðan** (< **\*werðan**), **feohtan** (< **\*fehtan**).

## 111.

<b>Indicative.</b>		<b>Subjunctive.</b>	
PRESENT.		PRESENT.	
<i>Sing.</i> 1.	Ic bind-e	<i>Sing.</i> 1.	Ic } bind-e
2.	ðū bintst (bind-est)	2.	ðū } bind-e
3.	hē bint (bind-eð)	3.	hē } bind-e
<i>Plur.</i> 1.	wē } bind-að	<i>Plur.</i> 1.	wē } bind-en
2.	gē } bind-að	2.	gē } bind-en
3.	hīe } bind-að	3.	hīe } bind-en
PRETERIT.		PRETERIT.	
<i>Sing.</i> 1.	Ic b̄ond	<i>Sing.</i> 1.	Ic } bund-e
2.	ðū bund-e	2.	ðū } bund-e
3.	hē b̄ond	3.	hē } bund-e
<i>Plur.</i> 1.	wē } bund-on	<i>Plur.</i> 1.	wē } bund-en
2.	gē } bund-on	2.	gē } bund-en
3.	hīe } bund-on	3.	hīe } bund-en
<b>Imperative.</b>	<b>Infinitive.</b>	<b>Present Participle.</b>	
<i>Sing.</i> 2.	bind-an	bind-ende	
<i>Plur.</i> 1.	bind-an		
2.	bind-að	<b>Gerund.</b>	<b>Past Participle.</b>
		tō bind-anne (-enne)	gebund-en

## 112.

### VOCABULARY.

**ðæt gefeht**, *fight, battle.*

**sēo gerecednes**, *narration* [**ręccan**].

**ðæt gesceap**, *creation* [**scieppan**].

sēo heḡung (§ 39, (3)), harrying, plundering [heḡian].

sē medu (medo) (§ 51), mead.

sēo meolc, milk.

sē middangeard, world [middle-yard].

sē munuc, monk [monachus].

sēo mȳre, mare [mearh].

hē sǣde, he said.

hīe sǣdon, they said.

sēo spēd, riches [speed].

spēdig, rich, prosperous [speedy].

sēo tīd, time [tide].

unspēdig, poor.

sē westanwind, west-wind.

ðæt wīn, wine.

ārīsan,	ārās,	ārison,	ārīsen,	to arise.
bīdan,	bād,	bidon,	gebīden,	to remain, expect (with gen.)
drēogan, <sup>3</sup>	drēag,	drugon,	gedrogen,	to endure, suffer.
drīncan,	drōnc,	druncon,	gedruncen,	to drink.
findan,	fōnd,	fundon,	gefunden,	to find.
geswīcan	geswāc,	geswicon,	geswīcen,	to cease, cease from (with gen.)
iernan (yrnan),	ōrn,	urnon,	geurnen,	to run.
onginnan,	ongōnn,	ongunnon,	ongunnen,	to begin.
rīdan,	rād,	ridon,	gerīden,	to ride.
sīngan,	sōng,	sungon,	gesungen,	to sing.
wrītan,	wrāt,	writon,	gewriten,	to write.

113.

#### EXERCISES.

1. Æfter ðissum wordum, sē munuc wrāt ealle ðā geḡecednesse on ānre bēc.
2. ðā eorlas ridon ūp ær ðǣm ðe ðā Dene ðæs gefeohtes geswīcen. 3. Cædmon sōng ærest be middangeardes gesceape. 4. Sē cyning ōnd ðā rīcostan men drīncað mȳran meolc, ōnd ðā unspēdigān drīncað medu. 5. Ōnd hē ārās ōnd sē



wind geswāc. 6. Hīe sǣdon ðæt hīe ðǣr westwindes biden. 7. Hwæt is nū mā ymbe ðās ðing tō sprecanne? 8. Ðā secgas ongunnon geswīcan ðǣre heƿgunga. 9. Ðā bēag ðæt lƿnd ðǣr ēastryhte, oððe sēo sǣ in on ðæt lƿnd. 10. Ðās lƿnd belimpað tō, ðǣm Eƿnglum. 11. Ðēah ðā Dene ealne dæg gefuhten, gīet hæfde Ælfred cyning sige. 12. Qnd ðæs (afterwards) ymbe āne mōnað gefeaht Ælfred cyning wið ealne ðone heƿ æt Wiltūne.

II. 1. The most prosperous men drank mare’s milk and wine, but the poor men drank mead. 2. I suffered many things before you began to help me (dat.). 3. About two days afterwards (**Ðæs ymbe twēgen dagas**), the plundering ceased. 4. The king said that he fought against all the army (**heƿre**). 5. Although the Danes remained one month (§ 98, (1)), they did not begin to fight. 6. These gifts belonged to my brother. 7. The earls were glad because their lord was (indicative) with them. 8. What did you find? 9. Then wrote he about (**be**) the wise man’s deeds. 10. What more is there to endure?

1. A few verbs of Class II have **ū** instead of **ēo** in the infinitive:

**brūcan, brēac, brucon, gebrocen, to enjoy** [brook].  
**būgan, bēag, bugon, gebogen, to bend, bow.**

2. By a law known as Grammatical Change, final **ð, s,** and **h** of strong verbs generally become **d, r,** and **g,** respectively, in the preterit plural and past participle.

3. Cf. the Scotch “to *dree* one’s weird” = *to endure one’s fate*.



## CHAPTER XX.

### STRONG VERBS: CLASSES IV, V, VI, AND VII.

#### CONTRACT VERBS.

[The student can now complete the conjugation for himself (§ 103). Only the principal parts will be given.]

## Class IV: The “Bear” Conjugation.

Vowel Succession: **e, æ, æ̅, o.**

The present stem ends in **l, r,** or **m,** no consonant following:

**l:** **hel-an, hæl, hæ̅l-on, gehol-en,** *to conceal.*  
**r:** **ber-an, bær, bæ̅r-on, gebor-en,** *to bear.*

The two following verbs are slightly irregular:

**m:** { **nim-an, nōm (nam), nōm-on (nām-on), genum-en,** *to take.*  
**cum-an, c(w)ōm, c(w)ōm-on, gecum-en,** *to come.*

115.

## Class V: The “Give” Conjugation.

Succession of Vowels: **e (ie), æ, æ̅, e.**

The present stem ends in a single consonant, never a liquid or nasal:

**met-an, mæt, mæ̅ton, gemet-en,** *to measure, mete.*  
**gief-an, geaf, gæ̅f-on, gegief-en,** *to give.*

NOTE 1.—The palatal consonants, **g, c,** and **sc,** convert a following **e** into **ie,** **æ** into **ea,** and **æ̅** into **ēa.** Hence **giefan** (< \***gef**an), **geaf** (< \***gæf**), **gæ̅fon** (< \***gæ̅f**on), **gegiefen** (< \***gegef**en). This change is known as Palatalization. See § 8.

NOTE 2.—The infinitives of the following important verbs are only apparently exceptional:

**biddan, bæd, bæ̅d-on, gebed-en,** *to ask for [bid].*  
**licgan, læg, læ̅g-on, geleg-en,** *to lie, extend.*  
**sittan, sæt, sæ̅t-on, geset-en,** *to sit.*

The original **e** reappears in the participial stems. It was changed to **i** in the present stems on account of a former **-jan** in the infinitive (**bid-jan,** etc.). See § 61. To the same cause is due the doubling of consonants in the infinitive. All simple consonants in O.E., with the exception of **r,** were doubled after a short vowel, when an original **j** followed.

116.

## Class VI: The “Shake” Conjugation.

Succession of Vowels: **a, ō, ō̅, a.**

**scac-an, scōc, scōc-on, gescac-en,** *to shake.*  
**far-an, fōr, fōr-on, gefar-en,** *to go [fare].*

117.

## Class VII: The “Fall” Conjugation.

Vowel Succession:  $\left. \begin{array}{c} \bar{a} \\ \bar{æ} \end{array} \right\}, \bar{e}, \bar{ē}, \left. \begin{array}{c} \bar{a} \\ \bar{æ} \end{array} \right\}; \text{ or } \left. \begin{array}{c} ea \\ \bar{e}a \\ \bar{o} \end{array} \right\}, \bar{e}o, \bar{ē}o, \left. \begin{array}{c} ea \\ \bar{e}a \\ \bar{o} \end{array} \right\}.$

- |     |                  |               |                  |                    |   |                       |
|-----|------------------|---------------|------------------|--------------------|---|-----------------------|
| (1) | <b>hāt-an,</b>   | <b>hēt,</b>   | <b>hēt-on,</b>   | <b>gehāt-en,</b>   | { | <i>to call, name,</i> |
|     |                  |               |                  |                    |   | <i>command.</i>       |
|     | <b>lāet-an,</b>  | <b>lēt,</b>   | <b>lēt-on,</b>   | <b>gelāet-en,</b>  |   | <i>to let.</i>        |
| (2) | <b>feall-an,</b> | <b>fēoll,</b> | <b>fēoll-on,</b> | <b>gefeall-en,</b> |   | <i>to fall.</i>       |
|     | <b>heald-an,</b> | <b>hēold,</b> | <b>hēold-on,</b> | <b>geheald-en,</b> |   | <i>to hold.</i>       |
|     | <b>hēaw-an,</b>  | <b>hēow,</b>  | <b>hēow-on,</b>  | <b>gehēaw-en,</b>  |   | <i>to hew.</i>        |
|     | <b>grōw-an,</b>  | <b>grēow,</b> | <b>grēow-on,</b> | <b>gegrōw-en,</b>  |   | <i>to grow.</i>       |

NOTE 1.—This class consists of the Reduplicating Verbs; that is, those verbs that originally formed their preterits not by internal vowel change (ablaut), but by prefixing to the present stem the initial consonant + *e* (cf. Gk. λέ-λοιπα and Lat. *dě-di*). Contraction then took place between the syllabic prefix and the root, the fusion resulting in  $\bar{e}$  or  $\bar{e}o$ : \***he-hat** > **heht** > **hēt**.

NOTE 2.—A peculiar interest attaches to **hātan**: the forms **hätte** and **hätton** are the sole remains in O.E. of the original Germanic passive. They are used both as presents and as preterits: **hätte** = *I am* or *was called, he is* or *was called*. No other verb in O.E. could have a passive sense without calling in the aid of the verb *to be* (§ 141).

## Contract Verbs.

### 118.

The few Contract Verbs found in O.E. do not constitute a new class; they fall under Classes I, II, V, VI, and VII, already treated. The present stem ended originally in **h**. This was lost before **-an** of the infinitive, contraction and compensatory lengthening being the result. The following are the most important of these verbs:

Classes.

- |      |                           |              |                 |                   |                  |                           |
|------|---------------------------|--------------|-----------------|-------------------|------------------|---------------------------|
| I.   | <b>ðēon</b> (< *ðīhan),   | <b>ðāh,</b>  | <b>ðig-on,</b>  | {                 | <i>geðig-en</i>  | <i>, to thrive.</i>       |
|      |                           |              |                 |                   | <i>geðung-en</i> |                           |
| II.  | <b>tēon</b> (< *tēohan),  | <b>tēah,</b> | <b>tug-on,</b>  | <b>getog-en,</b>  |                  | <i>to draw, go [tug].</i> |
| V.   | <b>sēon</b> (< *sehwan),  | <b>seah,</b> | <b>sāw-on,</b>  | <b>gesew-en,</b>  |                  | <i>to see.</i>            |
| VI.  | <b>slēan</b> (< *slahan), | <b>slōh,</b> | <b>slōg-on,</b> | <b>geslæg-en,</b> |                  | <i>to slay.</i>           |
| VII. | <b>fōn</b> (< *fōhan),    | <b>fēng,</b> | <b>fēng-on,</b> | <b>gefōng-en,</b> |                  | <i>to seize [fang].</i>   |

### 119.

The Present Indicative of these verbs runs as follows (see rules of *i*-umlaut, § 58):

- |          |    |       |       |        |         |       |
|----------|----|-------|-------|--------|---------|-------|
| Sing. 1. | Ic | ðēo   | tēo   | sēo    | slēa    | fō    |
| 2.       | ðū | ðīhst | tīhst | siehst | sliehst | fēhst |

	3.	hē	ðihð	tīehð	siehð	sliehð	fēhð	
Plur.	1.	wē	}	ðēoð	tēoð	sēoð	slēað	fōð
	2.	gē						
	3.	hīe						

The other tenses and moods are regularly formed from the given stems.

120.

VOCABULARY.

**sēo æht**, *property, possession* [**āgan**].

**aweg**, *away* [**on weg**].

**sēo fierd**, *English army* [**faran**].

**sē here**, *Danish army* [**hergian**].

**on gehwæðre hōnd**, *on both sides*.

**sige niman** (= **sige habban**), *to win (the) victory*.

**sēo spræc**, *speech, language*.

**tō rice fōn**, *to come to the throne*.<sup>1</sup>

**ðæt wæl** [Val-halla] } *slaughter, carnage*.

**sē wæsliht**,

**sē weall**, *wall, rampart*.

**ðæt wildor**, *wild beast, reindeer*.

**sē wīngæard**, *vineyard*.

**ābreccan**,<sup>2</sup> **ābræc**, **ābræcon**, **ābrocen**, *to break down*.

**cweðan**, **cwæð**, **cwædon**, **geweden**, *to say* [quoth].

**gesēon**, **geseah**, **gesāwon**, **gesewen**, *to see*.

**grōwan**, **grēow**, **grēowon**, **gegrōwen**, *to grow*.

**ofslēan**, **ofslōh**, **ofslōgon**, **ofslægen**, *to slay*.

**spreccan**, **spræc**, **spræcon**, **gespreccen**, *to speak*.

**stelan**, **stæl**, **stælon**, **gestolen**, *to steal*.

**stōndan**, **stōd**, **stōdon**, **gestōnden**, *to stand*.

**weaxan**, **wēox**, **wēoxon**, **geweaxen**, *to grow, increase* [wax].

121.

EXERCISES.

I. 1. Æfter ðæm sōðlice (indeed) ealle mēn spræcon āne (one) spræce. 2. Qnd

hē cwæð: “Ðis is ān folc, ƿnd ealle hīe sprecað āne sprǣce.” 3. On sumum stōwum wīngearðas grōwað. 4. Hē hēt ðā nǣdran ofslēan. 5. Ðā Eᅅgle ābrǣcon ðone lƿngan weall, ƿnd sige nōmon. 6. ƿnd ðæt sǣd grēow ƿnd wēox. 7. Ic ne geseah ðone mƿn sē ðe ðæs cnapan adesan stæl. 8. Hē wæs swȳðe spēdig man on ðǣm āhtum ðe hiera spēda on <sup>3</sup> bēoð, ðæt is, on wildrum. 9. ƿnd ðǣr wearð (was) micel wælsliht on gehwæðre hƿnd. 10. ƿnd æfter ðissum gefeohte cōm Ælfred cyning mid his fierde, ƿnd gefeaht wið ealne ðone here, ƿnd sige nōm. 11. Ðēos burg hātte <sup>4</sup> Æscesdūn (Ashdown). 12. Ðǣre cwēne līc læg on ðǣm hūse. 13. ƿnd sē dǣl ðe ðǣr aweg cōm wæs swȳðe lȳtel. 14. ƿnd ðæs ðrēotīene dagas Æðered tō rīce fēng.

II. 1. The men stood in the ships and fought against the Danes. 2. Before the thanes came, the king rode away. 3. They said (**sǣdon**) that all the men spoke one language. 4. They bore the queen’s body to Wilton. 5. Alfred gave many gifts to his army (dat. without **tō**) before he went away. 6. These men are called earls. 7. God sees all things. 8. The boy held the reindeer with (**mid**) his hands. 9. About six months afterwards, Alfred gained the victory, and came to the throne. 10. He said that there was very great slaughter on both sides.

1. Literally, *to take to (the) kingdom*. Cf. “Have you anything to take to?” (*Two Gentlemen of Verona*, IV, I, 42).

2. **Brecan** belongs properly in Class V, but it has been drawn into Class IV possibly through the influence of the **r** in the root.

3. See § 94, (5).

4. See § 117, Note 2.



## CHAPTER XXI.

### WEAK VERBS (§ 18).

122.

The verbs belonging to the Weak Conjugation are generally of more recent

origin than the strong verbs, being frequently formed from the roots of strong verbs. The Weak Conjugation was the growing conjugation in O.E. as it is in Mn.E. We instinctively put our newly coined or borrowed words into this conjugation (*telegraphed, boycotted*); and children, by the analogy of weak verbs, say *runned* for *ran*, *seed* for *saw*, *teared* for *tore*, *drawed* for *drew*, and *growed* for *grew*. So, for example, when Latin *dictāre* and *breviāre* came into O.E., they came as weak verbs, **dihtian** and **brēfian**.

### The Three Classes of Weak Verbs.

123.

There is no difficulty in telling, from the infinitive alone, to which of the three classes a weak verb belongs. Class III has been so invaded by Class II that but three important verbs remain to it: **habban**, *to have*; **libban**, *to live*; and **seċgan**, *to say*. Distinction is to be made, therefore, only between Classes II and I. Class II contains the verbs with infinitive in **-ian** not preceded by **r**. Class I contains the remaining weak verbs; that is, those with infinitive in **-r-ian** and those with infinitive in **-an** (not **-ian**).

#### Class I.

124.

The preterit singular and past participle of Class I end in **-ede** and **-ed**, or **-de** and **-ed** respectively.

NOTE.—The infinitives of this class ended originally in **-jan** (= **-ian**). This accounts for the prevalence of **i**-umlaut in these verbs, and also for the large number of short-voweled stems ending in a double consonant (§ 115, Note 2). The weak verb is frequently the causative of the corresponding strong verb. In such cases, the root of the weak verb corresponds in form to the preterit singular of the strong verb: Mn.E. *drench* (= *to make drink*), *lay* (= *to make lie*), *rear* (= *to make rise*), and *set* (= *to make sit*), are the umlauted forms of **drōnc** (preterit singular of **drincan**), **læg** (preterit singular of **licgan**), **rās** (preterit singular of **rīsan**), and **sæt** (preterit singular of **sittan**).

#### Preterit and Past Participle in **-ede** and **-ed**.

125.

Verbs with infinitive in **-an** preceded by **ri-** or the double consonants **mm**, **nn**,

**ss, bb, cg (= gg)**, add **-ede** for the preterit, and **-ed** for the past participle, the double consonant being always made single:

<b>ri:</b>	<b>nęri-an,</b>	<b>nęr-ede,</b>	<b>genęr-ed,</b>	<i>to save.</i>
<b>mm:</b>	<b>fręmm-an,</b>	<b>fręm-ede,</b>	<b>gefřęm-ed,</b>	<i>to perform [frame].</i>
<b>nn:</b>	<b>đęnn-an,</b>	<b>đęn-ede,</b>	<b>geđęn-ed,</b>	<i>to extend.</i>
<b>ss:</b>	<b>cnyss-an,</b>	<b>cnys-ede,</b>	<b>gecnys-ed,</b>	<i>to beat.</i>
<b>bb:</b>	<b>swębb-an,</b>	<b>swęf-ede,</b>	<b>geswęf-ed,</b>	<i>to put to sleep.</i>
<b>cg:</b>	<b>węcg-an,</b>	<b>węg-ede,</b>	<b>gewęg-ed,</b>	<i>to agitate.</i>

NOTE.—**Lęcgan**, *to lay*, is the only one of these verbs that syncopeates the **e**: **lęcgan**, **lęgde (lęde)**, **gełęgd (gelęd)**, instead of **lęgede**, **gełeged**.

## Preterit and Past Participle in **-de** and **-ed**.

### 126.

All the other verbs belonging to Class I. add **-de** for the preterit and **-ed** for the past participle. This division includes, therefore, all stems long by nature (§ 10, (3), (a)):

<b>dāel-an,</b>	<b>dāel-de,</b>	<b>gedāel-ed,</b>	<i>to deal out, divide [dāel].</i>
<b>dēm-an,</b>	<b>dēm-de,</b>	<b>gedēm-ed,</b>	<i>to judge [dōm].</i>
<b>grēt-an,</b>	<b>grēt-te,</b>	<b>gegrēt-ed,</b>	<i>to greet.</i>
<b>hīer-an,</b>	<b>hīer-de,</b>	<b>gehīer-ed,</b>	<i>to hear.</i>
<b>lāed-an,</b>	<b>lāed-de,</b>	<b>gelāed-ed,</b>	<i>to lead.</i>

NOTE 1.—A preceding voiceless consonant (§ 9, Note) changes **-de** into **-te**: **\*grēt-de** > **grēt-te**; **\*mēt-de** > **mēt-te**; **\*īec-de** > **īec-te**. Syncope and contraction are also frequent in the participles: **gegrēt-ed** > **\*gegrēt-d** > **gegrēt(t)**; **gelāed-ed** > **gelāed(d)**.

NOTE 2.—**Būan**, *to dwell, cultivate*, has an admixture of strong forms in the past participle: **būan**, **būde**, **gebūd (bŷn, gebūn)**. The present participle survives in Mn.E. *husband* = *house-dweller*.

### 127.

It includes, also, all stems long by position (§ 10, (3), (b)) except those in **mm**, **nn**, **ss**, **bb**, and **cg** (§ 125):

<b>sęnd-an,</b>	<b>sęnd-e,</b>	<b>gesęnd-ed,</b>	<i>to send.</i>
<b>sętt-an,</b>	<b>sęt-te,</b>	<b>gesęt-ed,</b>	<i>to set [sittan].</i>
<b>sigl-an,</b>	<b>sigl-de,</b>	<b>gesigl-ed,</b>	<i>to sail.</i>
<b>spęnd-an,</b>	<b>spęnd-e,</b>	<b>gespęnd-ed,</b>	<i>to spend.</i>
<b>trędd-an,</b>	<b>tręd-de,</b>	<b>getręd-ed,</b>	<i>to tread.</i>

NOTE.—The participles frequently undergo syncope and contraction: **gesęnded** > **gesęnd**; **gesęted** > **gesęt(t)**; **gespęded** > **gespęnd**; **getręded** > **getręd(d)**.

## Irregular Verbs of Class I.

## 128.

There are about twenty verbs belonging to Class I that are irregular in having no umlaut in the preterit and past participle. The preterit ends in **-de**, the past participle in **-d**; but, through the influence of a preceding voiceless consonant (§ 9, Note), **-ed** is generally unvoiced to **-te**, and **-d** to **-t**. The most important of these verbs are as follows:

<b>bring-an,</b>	<b>brōh-te,</b>	<b>gebrōh-t,</b>	<i>to bring.</i>
<b>byc-gan,</b>	<b>boh-te,</b>	<b>geboh-t,</b>	<i>to buy.</i>
<b>sēc-an,</b>	<b>sōh-te,</b>	<b>gesōh-t,</b>	<i>to seek.</i>
<b>sell-an,</b>	<b>seal-de,</b>	<b>geseal-d,</b>	<i>to give, sell [hand-sel].</i>
<b>tāec-an,</b>	<b>tāeh-te,</b>	<b>getāeh-t,</b>	<i>to teach.</i>
<b>tell-an,</b>	<b>teal-de,</b>	<b>geteal-d,</b>	<i>to count [tell].</i>
<b>ðenc-an,</b>	<b>ðoh-te,</b>	<b>geðoh-t,</b>	<i>to think.</i>
<b>ðync-an,</b>	<b>ðuh-te,</b>	<b>geðuh-t,</b>	<i>to seem [methinks].</i>
<b>wyrc-an,</b>	<b>worh-te,</b>	<b>geworh-t,</b>	<i>to work.</i>

NOTE.—Such of these verbs as have stems in **c** or **g** are frequently written with an inserted **e**: **bycgean**, **sēcean**, **tāec(e)an**, etc. This **e** indicates that **c** and **g** have palatal value; that is, are to be followed with a vanishing **y**-sound. In such cases, O.E. **c** usually passes into Mn.E. **ch**: **tāec(e)an** > *to teach*; **rāec(e)an** > *to reach*; **strēc(e)an** > *to stretch*. **Sēc(e)an** gives *beseech* as well as *seek*. See § 8.

## Conjugation of Class I.

## 129.

Paradigms of **nęrian**, *to save*; **fręmman**, *to perform*; **dāelan**, *to divide*:

### Indicative.

#### PRESENT.

<i>Sing.</i> 1.	Ic nęrie	fręmme	dāele	
2.	ðū nęrest	fręmest	dāelst	
3.	hē nęreð	fręmeð	dāelð	
<i>Plur.</i> 1.	wē	nęriað	fręmmað	
2.	gē			dāelað
3.	hīe			

#### PRETERIT.

<i>Sing.</i> 1.	Ic nęrede	fręmede	dāelde
2.	ðū nęredest	fręmedest	dāeldest
3.	hē nęrede	fręmede	dāelde
<i>Plur.</i> 1.	wē	fręmedon	dāeldon
2.	gē		



3. *nīe* } *nērean*

**Subjunctive.**

PRESENT.

*Sing.* 1. *Ic* }  
 2. *ðū* } *nērie*    *frēmme*    *dǣle*  
 3. *hē* }

*Plur.* 1. *wē* }  
 2. *gē* } *nērien*    *frēmmen*    *dǣlen*  
 3. *hīe* }

PRETERIT.

*Sing.* 1. *Ic* }  
 2. *ðū* } *nērede*    *frēmede*    *dǣlde*  
 3. *hē* }

*Plur.* 1. *wē* }  
 2. *gē* } *nēreden*    *frēmeden*    *dǣlden*  
 3. *hīe* }

**Imperative.**

*Sing.* 2. *nēre*                    *frēme*            *dǣl*  
*Plur.* 1. *nērian*                *frēmman*        *dǣlan*  
 2. *nēriað*                    *frēmmað*        *dǣlað*

**Infinitive.**

*nērian*                    *frēmman*                    *dǣlan*

**Gerund.**

*tō nērianne (-enne)*    *tō frēmmanne (-enne)*    *tō dǣlanne (-enne)*

**Present Participle.**

*nēriende*                    *frēmrende*                    *dǣlende*

**Past Participle.**

*genēred*                    *gefremed*                    *gedǣled*

NOTE.—The endings of the preterit present no difficulties; in the 2d and 3d singular present, however, the student will observe (a) that double consonants in the stem are made single: **frēmest**, **frēmeð** (not \***frēmrest**, \***frēmreð**); **ðenest**, **ðeneð**; **seġest** (**seġst**), **seġeð** (**seġt**); **fylst**, **fylð**, from **fyllan**, *to fill*; (b) that syncope is the rule in stems long by nature: **dǣlst** (< **dǣlest**), **dǣlð** (< **dǣleð**); **dēmst** (< **dēmest**), **dēmð** (< **dēmeð**); **hīerst** (< **hīerest**), **hīerð** (< **hīereð**). Double consonants are also made single in the imperative 2d singular and in the past participle. Stems long by nature take no final **-e** in the imperative: **dǣl**, **hīer**, **dēm**.

## Class II.

130.

The infinitive of verbs belonging to this class ends in **-ian** (not **-r-ian**), the

preterit singular in **-ode**, the past participle in **-od**. The preterit plural usually has **-edon**, however, instead of **-odon**:

<b>eard-ian</b> ,	<b>eard-ode</b> ,	<b>geeard-od</b> ,	<i>to dwell</i> [ <b>eorðe</b> ].
<b>luf-ian</b> ,	<b>luf-ode</b> ,	<b>geluf-od</b> ,	<i>to love</i> [ <b>lufu</b> ].
<b>rīcs-ian</b> ,	<b>rīcs-ode</b> ,	<b>gerīcs-od</b> ,	<i>to rule</i> [ <b>rīce</b> ].
<b>sealf-ian</b> ,	<b>sealf-ode</b> ,	<b>gesealf-od</b> ,	<i>to anoint</i> [ <b>salve</b> ].
<b>segl-ian</b> ,	<b>segl-ode</b> ,	<b>gesegl-od</b> ,	<i>to sail</i> [ <b>segel</b> ].

NOTE.—These verbs have no trace of original umlaut, since their **-ian** was once **-ōjan**. Hence, the vowel of the stem was shielded from the influence of the **j** (= **i**) by the interposition of **ō**.

## Conjugation of Class II.

131.

Paradigm of **lufian**, *to love*:

Indicative.		Subjunctive.	
PRESENT.		PRESENT.	
<i>Sing.</i> 1.	Ic lufie	<i>Sing.</i> 1.	Ic } lufie
2.	ðu lufast	2.	ðū } lufie
3.	hē lufað	3.	hē } lufie
<i>Plur.</i> 1.	wē } lufiað	<i>Plur.</i> 1.	wē } lufien
2.	gē } lufiað	2.	gē } lufien
3.	hīe } lufiað	3.	hīe } lufien
PRETERIT.		PRETERIT.	
<i>Sing.</i> 1.	Ic lufode	<i>Sing.</i> 1.	Ic } lufode
2.	ðu lufodest	2.	ðū } lufode
3.	hē lufode	3.	hē } lufode
<i>Plur.</i> 1.	wē } lufedon (-odon)	<i>Plur.</i> 1.	wē } lufeden (-oden)
2.	gē } lufedon (-odon)	2.	gē } lufeden (-oden)
3.	hīe } lufedon (-odon)	3.	hīe } lufeden (-oden)
Imperative.	Infinitive.	Present Participle.	
<i>Sing.</i> 2.	lufa	lufiende	
<i>Plur.</i> 1.	lufian		
2.	lufiað	Gerund.	Past Participle.
		tō lufianne (-enne)	gelufod

NOTE 1.—The **-ie** (**-ien**) occurring in the present must be pronounced as a dissyllable. The **y**-sound thus interposed between the **i** and **e** is frequently indicated by the letter **g**: **lufie**, or **lufige**; **lufien**, or **lufigen**. So also for **ia**: **lufiað**, or **lufigað**; **lufian**, or **lufig(e)an**.

NOTE 2.—In the preterit singular, **-ade**, **-ude**, and **-ede** are not infrequent for **-ode**.

## Class III.

132.

The few verbs belonging here show a blending of Classes I and II. Like certain verbs of Class I (§ 128), the preterit and past participle are formed by adding **-de** and **-d**; like Class II, the 2d and 3d present indicative singular end in **-ast** and **-að**, the imperative 2d singular in **-a**:

<b>habb-an,</b>	<b>hæf-de,</b>	<b>gehæf-d,</b>	<i>to have.</i>
<b>libb-an,</b>	<b>lif-de,</b>	<b>gelif-d,</b>	<i>to live.</i>
<b>sęcg-an,</b>	<b>sǣd-e (sæg-de),</b>	<b>gesǣd (gesæg-d),</b>	<i>to say.</i>

### Conjugation of Class III.

133.

Paradigms of **habban**, *to have*; **libban**, *to live*; **sęcgan**, *to say*.

<b>Indicative.</b>				
PRESENT.				
<i>Sing.</i> 1.	Ic	hæbbe	libbe	sęcge
2.	ðū	hæfst (hafast)	lifast	sęgst (sagast)
3.	hē	hæfð (hafað)	lifað	sęgð (sagað)
<i>Plur.</i> 1.	wē	} habbað	libbað	sęgað
2.	gē			
3.	hīe			
PRETERIT.				
<i>Sing.</i> 1.	Ic	hæfde	lifde	sǣde
2.	ðū	hæfdest	lifdest	sǣdest
3.	hē	hæfde	lifde	sǣde
<i>Plur.</i> 1.	wē	} hæfdon	lifdon	sǣdon
2.	gē			
3.	hīe			
<b>Subjunctive.</b>				
PRESENT.				
<i>Sing.</i> 1.	Ic	} hæbbe	libbe	sęcge
2.	ðū			
3.	hē			
<i>Plur.</i> 1.	wē	} hæbben	libben	sęcgen
2.	gē			
3.	hīe			
PRETERIT.				
<i>Sing.</i> 1.	Ic	} hæfde	lifde	sǣde
2.	ðū			
3.	hē			

<i>Plur.</i> 1. wē	}	hæfden	lifden	sǣden
2. gē				
3. hīe				
<b>Imperative.</b>				
<i>Sing.</i> 2. hafa			lifa	saga
<i>Plur.</i> 1. habban			libban	sęcgan
2. habbað			libbað	sęcgað
<b>Infinitive.</b>				
	habban		libban	sęcgan
<b>Gerund.</b>				
tō habbanne (-enne)		tō libbanne (-enne)		tō sęcganne (-enne)
<b>Present Participle.</b>				
	hæbbende		libbende	sęcgende
<b>Past Participle.</b>				
	gehæfd		gelifd	gesǣd



## CHAPTER XXII.

REMAINING VERBS; VERB-PHRASES WITH **habban**, **bēon**, AND **weorðan**.

### Anomalous Verbs. (See § 19.)

134.

These are:

<b>bēon</b> (wesan),	wæs,	wǣron,	—,	to be.
<b>willan</b> ,	wolde,	woldon,	—,	to will, intend.
<b>dōn</b> ,	dyde,	dydon,	gedōn,	to do, cause.
<b>gān</b> ,	ēode,	ēodon,	gegān,	to go.

NOTE.—In the original Indo-Germanic language, the first person of the present indicative singular ended in (1) **ō** or (2) **mi**. Cf. Gk. λύ-ω, εἶ-μί, Lat. *am-ō, su-m*. The Strong and Weak Conjugations of O.E. are survivals of the **ō**-class. The four Anomalous Verbs mentioned above are the sole remains in O.E. of the **mi**-class. Note the surviving **m** in **eom** *I am*, and **dōm** *I do* (Northumbrian form). These **mi**-verbs are sometimes called non-Thematic to distinguish them from the Thematic or **ō**-verbs.

### Conjugation of Anomalous Verbs.

## 135.

Only the present indicative and subjunctive are at all irregular:

**Indicative.**

## PRESENT.

<i>Sing.</i> 1.	Ic eom (bēom)	wille	dō	gā
2.	ðū eart (bist)	wilt	dēst	gǣst
3.	hē is (bið)	wille	dēð	gǣð

<i>Plur.</i> 1.	wē	} sind(on)	willað	dōð	gāð
	2. gē				
	3. hīe				

**Subjunctive.**

## PRESENT.

<i>Sing.</i> 1.	Ic	} sīe	wille	dō	gā
2.	ðū				
3.	hē				

<i>Plur.</i> 1.	wē	} sīen	willen	dōn	gān
	2. gē				
	3. hīe				

NOTE.—The preterit subjunctive of **bēon** is formed, of course, not from **wæs**, but from **wǣron**. See § 103, (3).

**Preterit-Present Verbs. (See § 19.)**

## 136.

These verbs are called Preterit-Present because the present tense (indicative and subjunctive) of each of them is, in form, a strong preterit, the old present having been displaced by the new. They all have weak preterits. Most of the Mn.E. Auxiliary Verbs belong to this class.

witan,	{ wiste, wisse, }	wiston,	gewiten,	to know [to wit, wot].
āgan,	āhte,	āhton,	āgen (adj.),	to possess [owe].
cunnan,	cūðe,	cūðon,	{ gecunnen, cūð (adj.), }	to know, can [uncouth, cunning].
durran,	dorste,	dorston,	—	to dare.
sculan,	sceolde,	sceoldon,	—	shall.
magan,	{ meahte, mihte, }	{ meahton, mihton, }	—	to be able, may.
mōtan,	mōste,	mōston,	—	may, must.

NOTE.—The change in meaning from preterit to present, with retention of the preterit form, is not uncommon in other languages. Several examples are found in Latin and Greek (cf. *nōvi* and *οἶδα*, *I know*). Mn.E. has gone further still: **āhte** and **mōste**, which had already suffered the loss of their

old preterits (**āh**, **mōt**), have been forced back again into the present (*ought*, *must*). Having exhausted, therefore, the only means of preterit formation known to Germanic, the strong and the weak, it is not likely that either *ought* or *must* will ever develop distinct preterit forms.

## **Conjugation of Preterit-Present Verbs.**

**137.**

The irregularities occur in the present indicative and subjunctive:

**Indicative.**

PRESENT.

<i>Sing.</i> 1.	Ic wāt	āh	cƿn (can)	dear	sceal	mæg	mōt	
2.	ðū wāst	āhst	cƿnst (canst)	dearst	scealt	meaht	mōst	
3.	hē wāt	āh	cƿn (can)	dear	sceal	mæg	mōt	
<i>Plur.</i> 1.	wē	} witon	āgon	cunnon	durren	sculon	magon	mōton
2.	gē							
3.	hīe							

**Subjunctive.**

PRESENT.

<i>Sing.</i> 1.	Ic	} wite	āge	cunne	durre	scule (scyle)	mæge	mōte
2.	ðū							
3.	hē							
<i>Plur.</i> 1.	wē	} witen	āgen	cunnen	durren	sculen (scylen)	mægen	mōten
2.	gē							
3.	hīe							

NOTE 1.—**Willan** and **sculan** do not often connote simple futurity in Early West Saxon, yet they were fast drifting that way. The Mn.E. use of *shall* only with the 1st person and *will* only with the 2d and 3d, to express simple futurity, was wholly unknown even in Shakespeare's day. The elaborate distinctions drawn between these words by modern grammarians are not only cumbersome and foreign to the genius of English, but equally lacking in psychological basis.

NOTE 2.—**Sculan** originally implied the idea of (1) *duty*, or *compulsion* (= *ought to*, or *must*), and this conception lurks with more or less prominence in almost every function of **sculan** in O.E.: **Dryhten bebēad Moyse hū hē sceolde beran ðā earce**, *The Lord instructed Moses how he ought to bear the ark*; **Ælc mann sceal be his andgietes mæðde ... sprecan ðæt he spricð, and dōn ðæt ðæt hē dēð**, *Every man must, according to the measure of his intelligence, speak what he speaks, and do what he does*. Its next most frequent use is to express (2) *custom*, the transition from the obligatory to the customary being an easy one: **Sē byrdesta sceall gyldan fiftyne mearðes fell**, *The man of highest rank pays fifteen marten skins*.

NOTE 3.—**Willan** expressed originally (1) *pure volition*, and this is its most frequent use in O.E. It may occur without the infinitive: **Nylle ic ðæs synfullan dēað, ac ic wille ðæt hē gecyrre and lybbe**, *I do not desire the sinner's death, but I desire that he return and live*. The wish being father to the intention, **willan** soon came to express (2) *purpose*: **Hē sæde ðæt hē at sumum cirre wolde fandian hū longe ðæt land norðryhte læge**, *He said that he intended, at some time, to investigate how far that land extended northward*.

**Verb-Phrases with *habban*, *bēon* (*wesan*), and *weorðan*.**

*Verb-Phrases in the Active Voice.*

The present and preterit of **habban**, combined with a past participle, are used in O.E., as in Mn.E., to form the present perfect and past perfect tenses:

PRESENT PERFECT.		PAST PERFECT.	
<i>Sing.</i> 1.	Ic hæbbe gedrifen	<i>Sing.</i> 1.	Ic hæfde gedrifen
2.	ðū hæfst gedrifen	2.	ðū hæfdest gedrifen
3.	hē hæfð gedrifen	3.	hē hæfde gedrifen
<i>Plur.</i> 1.	wē } habbað gedrifen	<i>Plur.</i> 1.	wē } hæfdon gedrifen
2.	gē }	2.	gē }
3.	hīe }	3.	hīe }

The past participle is not usually inflected to agree with the direct object: **Norðymbre ƿnd Ēastęngle hæfdon Ēlfrede cyninge āðas geseald** (not **gesealde**, § 82), *The Northumbrians and East Anglians had given king Alfred oaths*; **ƿnd hæfdon miclne dǣl ðāra horsa freten** (not **fretenne**), and *(they) had devoured a large part of the horses*.

NOTE.—Many sentences might be quoted in which the participle does agree with the direct object, but there seems to be no clear line of demarcation between them and the sentences just cited. Originally, the participle expressed a *resultant state*, and belonged in sense more to the object than to **habban**; but in Early West Saxon **habban** had already, in the majority of cases, become a pure auxiliary when used with the past participle. This is conclusively proved by the use of **habban** with intransitive verbs. In such a clause, therefore, as **oð ðæt hīe hine ofslāgenne hæfdon**, there is no occasion to translate *until they had him slain* (= *resultant state*); the agreement here is more probably due to the proximity of **ofslāgenne** to **hine**. So also **ac hī hæfdon þā hiera stemn gesętenne**, *but they had already served out (sat out) their military term*.

### 139.

If the verb is intransitive, and denotes *a change of condition, a departure or arrival*, **bēon (wesan)** usually replaces **habban**. The past participle, in such cases, partakes of the nature of an adjective, and generally agrees with the subject: **Mīne welan þe ic īo hæfde syndon ealle gewitene ƿnd gedrorene**, *My possessions which I once had are all departed and fallen away*; **wāeron þā men uppe on lōnde of āgāne**, *the men had gone up ashore*; **ƿnd þā oþre wāeron hungre ācwolen**, *and the others had perished of hunger*; **ƿnd ēac sē micla here wæs þā þær tō cumen**, *and also the large army had then arrived there*.

### 140.

A progressive present and preterit (not always, however, with distinctively progressive meanings) are formed by combining a present participle with the present and preterit of **bēon (wesan)**. The participle remains uninflected: **ƿnd**



**hīe alle on ðone cyning wærun feohtende**, and they all were fighting against the king; **Symle hē bið lōciende, nē slæpð hē nǣfre**, He is always looking, nor does He ever sleep.

NOTE.—In most sentences of this sort, the subject is masculine (singular or plural); hence no inference can be made as to agreement, since **-e** is the participial ending for both numbers of the nominative masculine (§ 82). By analogy, therefore, the other genders usually conform in inflection to the masculine: **wæron þā ealle þā dēoflu clypigende ānre stefne**, then were all the devils crying with one voice.

### Verb-Phrases in the Passive Voice.

#### 141.

Passive constructions are formed by combining **bēon (wesan)** or **weorðan** with a past participle. The participle agrees regularly with the subject: **hīe wæron benumene ægðer ge þæs cēapes ge þæs cornes**, they were deprived both of the cattle and the corn; **hī bēoð āblende mid ðām þīostrum heora scylda**, they are blinded with the darkness of their sins; and **sē wæhrēowa Domiciānus on ðām ylcan gēare wearð ācweald**, and the murderous Domitian was killed in the same year; **Ꝁnd Æþelwulf aldormon wearð ofslægen**, and Æthelwulf, alderman, was slain.

NOTE 1.—To express agency, Mn.E. employs *by*, rarely *of*; M.E. *of*, rarely *by*; O.E. **frōm (fram)**, rarely **of**: **Sē ðe Godes bebodu ne gecnǣwð, ne bið hē oncnāwen frōm Gode**, He who does not recognise God's commands, will not be recognized by God; **Betwux þām wearð ofslægen Ēadwine ... fram Brytta cyninge**, Meanwhile, Edwin was slain by the king of the Britons.

NOTE 2.—O.E. had no progressive forms for the passive, and could not, therefore, distinguish between *He is being wounded* and *He is wounded*. It was not until more than a hundred years after Shakespeare's death that *being* assumed this function. **Weorðan**, which originally denoted a passage from one state to another, was ultimately driven out by **bēon (wesan)**, and survives now only in *Woe worth (= be to)*.

#### 142.

### VOCABULARY.

**ðā Beormas**, *Permians*.

**ðā Dēeniscan**, *the Danish (men), Danes*.

**ðā Finnas**, *Fins*.

**ðæt gewald**, *control* [**wealdan**].

**sēo sǣ**, *sea*.

sēo scīr, shire, district.

sēo wælstōw, battle-field.

āgan wælstōwe gewald, to maintain possession of the battle-field.

sē wealdend, ruler, wielder.

geflīeman, geflīemde, geflīemed, to put to flight.

gestaðelian, gestaðelode, gestaðelod, to establish, restore.

gewissian, gewissode, gewissod, to guide, direct.

wīcian, wīcode, gewīcod, to dwell [wīc = village].

143.

#### EXERCISES.

I. 1. Qnd ðær wæs micel wæl geslægen on gehwæþre hōnd, qnd Æþelwulf ealdormōn wearþ ofslægen; qnd þā Dēniscan āhton wælstōwe gewald. 2. Qnd þæs ymb ānne mōnaþ gefeaht Ælfred cyning wiþ ealne þone hēre ond hine geflīemde. 3. Hē sǣde þēah þæt þæt land sīe swīþe lang norþ þōnan. 4. Þā Beormas hæfdon swīþe wel gebūd (§ 126, Note 2) hiera land. 5. Ohthere sǣde þæt sēo scīr hātte (§ 117, Note 2) Hālgoland, þe hē on (§ 94, (5)) būde. 6. Þā Finnas wīcedon be þǣre sǣ. 7. Dryhten, ælmihtiga (§ 78, Note) God, Wyrhta and Wealdend ealra gesceafta, ic bidde ðē for ðīnre miclan mildheortnesse ðæt ðū mē gewissie tō ðīnum willan; and gestaðela mīn mōd tō ðīnum willan and tō mīnre sǣwle ðearfe. 8. Þā sceolde hē ðǣr bīdan ryhtnorþanwindes, for ðǣm þæt land bēag þǣr sūðryhte, oþþe sēo sǣ in on ðæt land, hē nysse hwæðer. 9. For ðȳ, mē ðyncð bētre, gif ēow swā ðyncð, ðæt wē ēac ðās bēc on ðæt geðēode wēnden ðe wē ealle gecnāwan mægen.

II. 1. When the king heard that, he went (= then went he) westward with his army to Ashdown. 2. Lovest thou me more than these? 3. The men said that the shire which they lived in was called Halgoland. 4. All things were made (**wyrca**n) by God. 5. They were fighting for two days with (= against) the Danes. 6. King Alfred fought with the Danes, and gained the victory; but the Danes retained possession of the battle-field. 7. These men dwelt in England before they came hither. 8. I have not seen the book of (**ymbe**) which you speak (**spreca**n).

PART III.  
—  
**SELECTIONS FOR READING.**  
—

PROSE.

INTRODUCTORY.

**I. The Anglo-Saxon Chronicle.**

THIS famous work, a series of progressive annals by unknown hands, embraces a period extending from Cæsar's invasion of England to 1154. It is not known when or where these annals began to be recorded in English.

“The annals from the year 866—that of Ethelred's ascent of the throne—to the year 887 seem to be the work of one mind. Not a single year is passed over, and to several is granted considerable space, especially to the years 871, 878, and 885. The whole has gained a certain roundness and fulness, because the events—nearly all of them episodes in the ever-recurring conflict with the Danes—are taken in their connection, and the thread dropped in one year is resumed in the next. Not only is the style in itself concise; it has a sort of nervous severity and pithy rigor. The construction is often antiquated, and suggests at times the freedom of poetry; though this purely historical prose is far removed from poetry in profusion of language.” (Ten Brink, *Early Eng. Lit.*, I.)

**II. The Translations of Alfred.**

Alfred's reign (871-901) may be divided into four periods. The *first*, the period of Danish invasion, extends from 871 to 881; the *second*, the period of comparative quiet, from 881 to 893; the *third*, the period of renewed strife

(beginning with the incursions of Hasting), from 893 to 897; the *fourth*, the period of peace, from 897 to 901. His literary work probably falls in the second period.\*

The works translated by Alfred from Latin into the vernacular were (1) *Consolation of Philosophy* (*De Consolatione Philosophiae*) by Boëthius (475-525), (2) *Compendious History of the World* (*Historiarum Libri VII*) by Orosius (c. 418), (3) *Ecclesiastical History of the English* (*Historia Ecclesiastica Gentis Anglorum*) by Bede (672-735), and (4) *Pastoral Care* (*De Cura Pastoralis*) by Pope Gregory the Great (540-604).

The chronological sequence of these works is wholly unknown. That given is supported by Turner, Arend, Morley, Grein, and Pauli. Wülker argues for an exact reversal of this order. According to Ten Brink, the order was more probably (1) *Orosius*, (2) *Bede*, (3) *Boëthius*, and (4) *Pastoral Care*. The most recent contribution to the subject is from Wülfing, who contends for (1) *Bede*, (2) *Orosius*, (3) *Pastoral Care*, and (4) *Boëthius*.

\* There is something inexpressibly touching in this clause from the great king's pen: gif wē ðā stilnesse habbað. He is speaking of how much he hopes to do, by his translations, for the enlightenment of his people.

## I. THE BATTLE OF ASHDOWN.

[From the *Chronicle*, Parker MS. The event and date are significant. The Danes had for the first time invaded Wessex. Alfred's older brother, Ethelred, was king; but to Alfred belongs the glory of the victory at Ashdown (Berkshire). Asser (*Life of Alfred*) tells us that for a long time Ethelred remained praying in his tent, while Alfred and his followers went forth "like a wild boar against the hounds."]

1 871. Hēr cuōm <sup>1</sup> sē hēre tō Rēadingum on Westseaxe,  
2 ƿnd þæs ymb iii niht ridon ii eorlas ūp. Ða gemētte hīe  
1 Æþelwulf aldorman <sup>2</sup> on Eᅅglafelda, ƿnd him þāer wiþ gefeaht,  
2 ƿnd sige nam. Ðæs ymb iiii niht Æþered cyning  
3 ƿnd Ælfred his brōþur <sup>3</sup> þāer micle fierd tō Rēadingum  
4 gelæddon, ƿnd wiþ þone hēre gefuhton; ƿnd þāer wæs  
5 micel wæl geslægen on gehwæpre hƿnd, ƿnd Æþelwulf  
6 aldorman wearþ ofslægen; ƿnd þa Dēniscan āhton wælstōwe  
7 gewald.

8 Qnd þæs ymb iiii niht gefeagt Æþered cyning Qnd  
9 Ælfred his brōþur wiþ alne <sup>4</sup> þone here on Æscesdūne.  
10 Qnd hīe wærun <sup>5</sup> on twæm gefylcum: on oþrum wæs  
11 Bāchsecg Qnd Halfdene þā hæþnan cyningas, Qnd on  
12 oþrum wæron þā eorlas. Qnd þā gefeagt sē cyning  
13 Æþered wiþ þāra cyninga getruman, Qnd þær wearþ sē  
14 cyning Bāgsæg ofslægen; Qnd Ælfred his brōþur wiþ  
15 þāra eorla getruman, Qnd þær wearþ Sidroc eorl ofslægen  
16 sē alda, <sup>6</sup> Qnd Sidroc eorl sē gioncga, <sup>7</sup> Qnd Ōsbearn eorl,  
17 Qnd Fræna eorl, Qnd Hareld eorl; Qnd þā hergas <sup>8</sup> bēgen  
18 gefliemde, Qnd fela þūsenda ofslægenra, Qnd onfehtende  
19 wæron oþ niht.

20 Qnd þæs ymb xiiii niht gefeagt Æþered cyning Qnd  
21 Ælfred his brōður wiþ þone here æt Basengum, Qnd þær  
22 þa Dēniscan sige nāmon.

23 Qnd þæs ymb ii mōnaþ gefeagt Æþered cyning Qnd  
24 Ælfred his brōþur wiþ þone here æt Mēretūne, Qnd hīe  
25 wærun on tuæm <sup>9</sup> gefylcium, Qnd hīe bütū gefliemdon, Qnd  
26 lōnge on dæg sige āhton; Qnd þær wearþ micel wælsliht  
27 on gehwæþere hōnd; Qnd þā Dēniscan āhton wælstōwe  
1 gewald; Qnd þær wearþ Hēahmund bisceop ofslægen,  
2 Qnd fela gōdra mōnna. Qnd æfter þissum gefeohte cuōm <sup>1</sup>  
3 micel sumorlida.

4 Qnd þæs ofer Ēastron gefōr Æþered cyning; Qnd hē  
5 rīcsode v gear; Qnd his līc līþ æt Wīnburnan.

6 Þā fēng Ælfred Æþelwulfing his brōþur tō Wesseaxna  
7 rīce. Qnd þæs ymb āne mōnaþ gefeagt Ælfred cyning  
8 wiþ alne <sup>4</sup> þone here lýtla werede <sup>10</sup> æt Wiltūne, Qnd hine  
9 lōnge on dæg gefliemde, Qnd þā Dēniscan āhton wælstōwe  
10 gewald.

11 Qnd þæs gēares wurdon viiii folcgefoht gefohten wiþ  
12 þone here on þȳ cynerīce be sūþan Tēmese, būtan þām þe

13 him Ælfred þæs cyninges brōþur ƿnd ānlīpig aldormƿn<sup>2</sup> ƿnd  
14 cyninges þegnas oft rāde onridon þe mƿn nā ne rīmde;  
15 ƿnd þæs gēares wāerun<sup>5</sup> ofslægene viiii eorlas ƿnd ān cyning.  
16 ƿnd þȳ gēare nāmon Westseaxe friþ wiþ þone hēre.

**100.8. gefeaht.** Notice that the singular is used. This is the more common construction in O.E. when a compound subject, composed of singular members, follows its predicate. Cf. *For thine is the kingdom, and the power, and the glory.* See also p. 107, note on **wæs**.

**100.18. ƿnd fela þūsenda ofslægenra,** *and there were many thousands of slain (§ 91).*

**101.12. būtan þām þe,** etc., *besides which, Alfred ... made raids against them (him), which were not counted.* See § 70, Note.

CONSULT GLOSSARY AND PARADIGMS UNDER FORMS GIVEN BELOW.

No note is made of such variants as y (ȳ) or i (ī) for **ie (īe)**. See Glossary under **ie (īe)**; occurrences, also, of **and** for **ƿnd**, **land** for **lƿnd**, are found on almost every page of Early West Saxon. Such words should be sought for under the more common forms, **ƿnd**, **lƿnd**.

1 = cwōm.

2 = ealdormƿn.

3 = brōþor.

4 = ealne.

5 = wāeron.

6 = ealda.

7 = geonga.

8 = hēras.

9 = twāem.

10 = werode.

## II. A PRAYER OF KING ALFRED.

[With this characteristic prayer, Alfred concludes his translation of Boëthius's *Consolation of*

*Philosophy.* Unfortunately, the only extant MS. (Bodleian 180) is Late West Saxon. I follow, therefore, Prof. A. S. Cook's normalization on an Early West Saxon basis. See Cook's *First Book in Old English*, p. 163.]

1 Dryhten, ælmihtiga God, Wyrhta and Wealdend ealra  
2 gesceafta, ic bidde ðē for ðīnre miclan mildheortnesse,  
3 and for ðǣre hālgan rōde tǣcne, and for Sanctæ Marian  
4 mægðhāde, and for Sancti Michaeles gehīersumnesse, and  
5 for ealra ðīnra hālgena lufan and hīera earnungum, ðæt  
6 ðū mē gewissie bēt ðonne ic āworhte tō ðē; and gewissa  
7 mē tō ðīnum willan, and tō mīnre sāwle ðearfe, bēt ðonne  
8 ic self cunne; and gestaðela mīn mōd tō ðīnum willan and  
9 tō mīnre sāwle ðearfe; and gestranga mē wið ðæs dēofles  
10 costnungum; and āfierr fram mē ðā fūlan gālnesse and  
11 ælce unrihtwīsnesse; and gescield mē wið mīnum wiðerwinnum,  
12 gesewenlīcum and ungesewenlīcum; and tǣc mē  
13 ðīnne willan tō wyrceanne; ðæt ic mæge ðē inweardlīce  
14 lufian tōforan eallum ðingum, mid clǣnum geðance and  
15 mid clǣnum līchaman. For ðon ðe ðū eart mīn Scieppend,  
16 and mīn Alīesend, mīn Fultum, mīn Frōfor, mīn Trēownes,  
17 and mīn Tōhopa. Sīe ðē lof and wuldor nū and  
18 ā ā ā, tō worulde būtan æghwilcum ende. Amen.

**102.3-4. Marian ... Michaeles.** O.E. is inconsistent in the treatment of foreign names. They are sometimes naturalized, and sometimes retain in part their original inflections.

**Marian**, an original accusative, is here used as a genitive; while **Michaeles** has the O.E. genitive ending.

**102.17. Sīe ðē lof.** See § 105, 1.

### III. THE VOYAGES OF OHTHERE AND WULFSTAN.

[Lauderdale and Cottonian MSS. These voyages are an original insertion by Alfred into his

translation of Orosius's *Compendious History of the World*.

“They consist,” says Ten Brink, “of a complete description of all the countries in which the Teutonic tongue prevailed at Alfred’s time, and a full narrative of the travels of two voyagers, which the king wrote down from their own lips. One of these, a Norwegian named Ohthere, had quite circumnavigated the coast of Scandinavia in his travels, and had even penetrated to the White Sea; the other, named Wulfstan, had sailed from Schleswig to Frische Haff. The geographical and ethnographical details of both accounts are exceedingly interesting, and their style is attractive, clear, and concrete.”

Ohthere made two voyages. Sailing first northward along the western coast of Norway, he rounded the North Cape, passed into the White Sea, and entered the Dwina River (**ān micel ēa**). On his second voyage he sailed southward along the western coast of Norway, entered the Skager Rack (**wīdsæ**), passed through the Cattegat, and anchored at the Danish port of Haddeby (**æt Hæþum**), modern Schleswig.

Wulfstan sailed only in the Baltic Sea. His voyage of seven days from Schleswig brought him to Drausen (**Trūsō**) on the shore of the Drausensea.]

### Ohthere's First Voyage.

1 Ōthere sǣde his hlāforde, Ælfrede cyninge, þæt hē  
2 ealra Norðmōnna norþmest būde. Hē cwæð þæt hē būde  
3 on þǣm lande norþweardum wiþ þā Westsæ. Hē sǣde  
4 þēah þæt þæt land sīe swīþe lang norþ þonan; ac hit is  
5 eal wēste, būton on fēawum stōwum styccemælum wīciað  
6 Finnas, on huntode on wintra, qnd on sumera on fiscoþe  
7 be þære sǣ. Hē sǣde þæt hē æt sumum cirre wolde  
8 fandian hū lōnge þæt land norþryhte lǣge, oþþe hwæðer  
9 ænig mōn be norðan þǣm wēstenne būde. Ðā fōr hē  
10 norþryhte be þǣm lande: lēt him ealne weg þæt wēste  
11 land on ðæt stēorbord, qnd þā wīdsæ on ðæt bæcbord þrīe  
12 dagas. Ðā wæs hē swā feor norþ swā þā hwælhuntan  
13 firrest faraþ. Ðā fōr hē þā gīet norþryhte swā feor swā  
14 hē meahte on þǣm oþrum þrīm dagum gesiglan. Ðā bēag  
15 þæt land þær ēastryhte, oþþe sēo sǣ in on ðæt lōnd, hē  
16 nysse hwæðer, būton hē wisse ðæt hē ðær bād westanwindes  
17 qnd hwōn norþan, qnd siglde ðā ēast be lande  
18 swā swā hē meahte on fēower dagum gesiglan. Ðā  
19 sceolde hē ðær bīdan ryhtnorþanwindes, for ðæm þæt  
20 land bēag þær sūþryhte, oþþe sēo sǣ in on ðæt land, hē



21 nysse hwæper. Ðā siglde hē þōnan sūðryhte be lande  
1 swā swā hē mehte <sup>1</sup> on fīf dagum gesiglan. Ðā læg þær  
2 ān micel ēa ūp in on þæt land. Ðā cirton hīe ūp in on  
3 ðā ēa, for þæm hīe ne dorston forþ bī þære ēa siglan for  
4 unfriþe; for þæm ðæt land wæs eall gebūn on ōpre healfe  
5 þære ēas. Ne mētte hē ær nān gebūn land, siþþan hē  
6 frōm his āgnum hām fōr; ac him wæs ealne weg wēste  
7 land on þæt stēorbord, būtan fiscerum ƿnd fugelerum ōnd  
8 huntum, ƿnd þæt wæron eall Finnas; ƿnd him wæs ā  
9 wīdsæ on ðæt bæcbord. Ðā Beormas hæfdon swīþe wel  
10 gebūd hira land: ac hīe ne dorston þær on cuman. Ac  
11 þāra Terfinna land wæs eal wēste, būton ðær huntan  
12 gewīcodon, oþþe fisceras, oþþe fugeleras.

13 Fela spella him sædon þā Beormas ægþer ge of hira  
14 āgnum lande ge of þæm landum þe ymb hīe ūtan wæron;  
15 ac hē nyste hwæt þæs sōþes wæs, for þæm hē hit self ne  
16 geseah. Ðā Finnas, him þūhte, ƿnd þā Beormas spræcon  
17 nēah ān geþeode. Swīpost hē fōr ðider, tō ēacan þæs  
18 landes scēawunge, for þæm horshwælum, for ðæm hīe  
19 habbað swīþe æþele bān on hiora <sup>2</sup> tōþum—þā tēð hīe brōhton  
20 sume þæm cyninge—ƿnd hiora hȳd bið swīðe gōd tō  
21 sciprāpum. Sē hwæl bið micle læssa þonne ōðre hwalas:  
22 ne bið hē lengra ðonne syfan <sup>3</sup> ęlna lang; ac on his āgnum  
23 lande is sē bētsta hwælhuntað: þā bēoð eahta and fēowertiges  
24 ęlna lange, and þā mæstan fiftiges ęlna lange;  
25 þāra hē sæde þæt hē syxa sum ofslōge syxtig on twām  
26 dagum.

1 Hē wæs swȳðe spēdig man on þæm æhtum þe heora <sup>2</sup>  
2 spēda on bēoð, þæt is, on wiltrum. Hē hæfde þā gȳt, ðā  
3 hē þone cyningc <sup>5</sup> sōhte, tamra dēora unbebohtra syx hund.  
4 Ðā dēor hī hātað ‘hrānas’; þāra wæron syx stælhrānas;  
5 ðā bēoð swȳðe dȳre mid Finnum, for ðæm hȳ fōð þā  
6 wildan hrānas mid. Hē wæs mid þæm fyrstum mannum

7 on þāem lande: næfde hē þēah mā ðonne twēntig hrȳðera,  
8 and twēntig scēapa, and twēntig swȳna; and þæt lȳtle  
9 þæt hē ęrede, hē ęrede mid horsan. <sup>4</sup> Ac hyra ā is mæst  
10 on þāem gafole þe ðā Finnas him gylðað. Þæt gafol bið  
11 on dēora fellum, and on fugela feðerum, and hwales bāne,  
12 and on þāem sciprāpum þe bēoð of hwæles hȳde geworht  
13 and of sēoles. Æghwilc gylt be hys gebyrdum. Sē byrdesta  
14 sceall gyldan fiftȳne mearðes fell, and fīf hrānes,  
15 and ān beren fel, and tȳn ambra feðra, and berenne kyrtel  
16 oððe yterenne, and twēgen sciprāpas; ægþer sȳ syxtig  
17 ęlna lang, oþer sȳ of hwæles hȳde geworht, oþer of sīoles. <sup>6</sup>

18 Hē sēde ðæt Norðmanna land wære swȳþe lang and  
19 swȳðe smæl. Eal þæt his man āðer oððe ęttan oððe ęrian  
20 mæg, þæt lið wið ðā sē; and þæt is þēah on sumum  
21 stōwum swȳðe clūdig; and licgað wilde mōras wið ēastan  
22 and wið ūpp on emnlange þāem bȳnum lande. On þāem  
23 mōrum eardiað Finnas. And þæt bȳne land is ēasteward  
24 brādost, and symle swā norðor swā smælre. <sup>7</sup> Eastewerd  
25 hit mæg bīon <sup>8</sup> syxtig mīla brād, oþþe hwēne bræðre;  
26 and middeward þrītig oððe brādre; and norðeward hē  
27 cwæð, þær hit smalost wære, þæt hit mihte bēon þrēora  
28 mīla brād tō þāem mōre; and sē mōr syðþan, <sup>9</sup> on sumum  
1 stōwum, swā brād swā man mæg on twām wucum oferfēran;  
2 and on sumum stōwum swā brād swā man mæg  
3 on syx dagum oferfēran.

4 Ðonne is tōemnes þāem lande sūðewardum, on oðre  
5 healfe þæs mōres, Swēoland, oþ þæt land norðeward;  
6 and tōemnes þāem lande norðewardum, Cwēna land. Þā  
7 Cwēnas hęrgiað hwīlum on ðā Norðmęn ofer ðone mōr,  
8 hwīlum þā Norðmęn on hȳ. And þær sint swīðe micle  
9 męras fersce geond þā mōras; and berað þā Cwēnas hyra  
10 scypu ofer land on ðā męras, and þanon hęrgiað on ðā  
11 Norðmęn; hȳ habbað swȳðe lȳtle scypa and swȳðe

12 leohte.

**104.6. from his āgnum hām.** An adverbial dative singular without an inflectional ending is found with **hām**, **dæg**, **morgen**, and **ǣfen**.

**104.8. ond þæt wæron.** See § 40, Note 3.

**104.15. hwæt þæs sōþes wæs.** Sweet errs in explaining **sōþes** as attracted into the genitive by **þæs**. It is not a predicate adjective, but a partitive genitive after **hwæt**.

**104.25. syxa sum.** See § 91, Note 2.

**105.2. on bēoð.** See § 94, (5).

**105.19. Eal þæt his man.** Pronominal genitives are not always possessive in O.E.; **his** is here the partitive genitive of **hit**, the succeeding relative pronoun being omitted: *All that (portion) of it that may, either-of-the-two, either be grazed or plowed*, etc. (§ 70, Note).

**106.11-12. scypa ... leohte.** These words exhibit inflections more frequent in Late than in Early West Saxon. The normal forms would be **scypu**, **leoht**; but in Late West Saxon the **-u** of short-stemmed neuters is generally replaced by **-a**; and the nominative accusative plural neuter of adjectives takes, by analogy, the masculine endings; **hwate**, **gōde**, **hālge**, instead of **hwatu**, **gōd**, **hālgu**.

1 = meahte, mihte.

2 = hiera.

3 = seofon.

4 = horsum.

5 = cyning.

6 = sēoles.

7 = -weard.

8 = bēon.

9 = siððan.

## Ohthere's Second Voyage.

13 Ohthere sǣde þæt sīo <sup>1</sup> scīr hātte Hālgoland, þe hē on  
14 būde. Hē cwæð þæt nān man ne būde be norðan him.  
15 Þonne is ān port on sūðewardum þǣm lande, þone man  
16 hǣt Sciringeshēal. Þyder hē cwæð þæt man ne mihte  
17 gesealian on ānum mōnðe, gyf man on niht wīcode, and  
18 ælce dæge hæfde ambyrne wind; and ealle ðā hwīle hē  
19 sceal seglian be lande. And on þæt stēorbord him bið  
20 ærest Īraland, and þonne ðā īgland þe synd betux Īralande  
21 and þissum lande. Þonne is þis land, oð hē cymð  
22 tō Sciringeshēale, and ealne weg on þæt bæcbord Norðweg.  
1 Wið sūðan þone Sciringeshēal fylð swýðe mycel  
2 sǣ ūp in on ðæt land; sēo is brādre þonne ænig man ofer  
3 sēon mæge. And is Gotland on oðre healfe ongēan, and  
4 siððan Sillende. Sēo sǣ lið mænig <sup>2</sup> hund mīla ūp in on  
5 þæt land.  
6 And of Sciringeshēale hē cwæð ðæt hē seglode on fīf  
7 dagan <sup>3</sup> tō þǣm porte þe mōn hǣt æt Hǣþum; sē stent  
8 betuh Winedum, and Seaxum, and Angle, and hýrð in  
9 on Dene. Ðā hē þiderweard seglode fram Sciringeshēale,  
10 þā wæs him on þæt bæcbord Denamearc and on  
11 þæt stēorbord wīdsǣ þrý dagas; and þā, twēgen dagas ær  
12 hē tō Hǣþum cōme, him wæs on þæt stēorbord Gotland,  
13 and Sillende, and īglanda fela. On þǣm landum eardodon  
14 Engle, ær hī hider on land cōman. <sup>4</sup> And hym wæs  
15 ðā twēgen dagas on ðæt bæcbord þā īgland þe in on  
16 Denemearce hýrað.

**107.7. æt Hǣþum.** “This pleonastic use of *æt* with names of places occurs elsewhere in the older writings, as in the Chronicle (552), ‘in þære stōwe þe is genemned æt Searobyrg,’ where the *æt* has been erased by some later hand, showing that the idiom had become obsolete. *Cp.* the

German ‘Gasthaus zur Krone,’ Stamboul = *es t̄an p̄olin.*”  
(Sweet.) See, also, *Atterbury*, § 28, Note 3.

107.14-15. **wæs ... þā īgland.** The singular predicate is due again to inversion (p. 100, note on **gefeah**). The construction is comparatively rare in O.E., but frequent in Shakespeare and in the popular speech of to-day. Cf. *There is, Here is, There has been*, etc., with a (single) plural subject following.

1 = sēo.

2 = mōnig.

3 = dagum.

4 = cōmen.

### Wulfstan’s Voyage.

17 Wulfstān s̄æde þæt hē gefōre of H̄æðum, þæt hē w̄ære  
18 on Trūsō on syfan dagum and nihtum, þæt þæt scip wæs  
19 ealne weg yrnende under segle. Weonoðland him wæs  
1 on st̄orbord, and on bæcbord him wæs Langaland, and  
2 L̄æland, and Falster, and Scōnēg; and þās land eall  
3 h̄yrað tō D̄enemearcan. And þonne Burgenda land wæs  
4 ūs on bæcbord, and þā habbað him sylfe <sup>1</sup> cyning. Þonne  
5 æfter Burgenda lande w̄æron ūs þās land, þā synd h̄atene  
6 ærest Bl̄ēcinga-ēg, and M̄eore, and Ēowland, and Gotland  
7 on bæcbord; and þās land h̄yrað tō Sw̄eom. And Weonodland  
8 wæs ūs ealne weg on st̄orbord oð W̄islemūðan.  
9 S̄eo W̄isle is sw̄yðe mycel ēa, and h̄io <sup>2</sup> t̄olið W̄itland and  
10 Weonodland; and þæt W̄itland belimpeð tō Estum; and  
11 s̄eo W̄isle lið ūt of Weonodlande, and lið in Estm̄ere;  
12 and s̄e Estm̄ere is h̄uru fift̄ene <sup>3</sup> m̄ila brād. Þonne cymeð  
13 Ilfing ēastan in Estm̄ere of ðām m̄ere, ðe Trūsō standeð  
14 in st̄æðe; and cumað ūt samod in Estm̄ere, Ilfing ēastan  
15 of Estlande, and W̄isle s̄ūðan of Winodlande. And

16 þonne benimð Wīslle Ilfing hire naman, and ligeð of þāem  
17 mere west and norð on sǣ; for ðȳ hit man hæet  
18 Wīsllemūða.

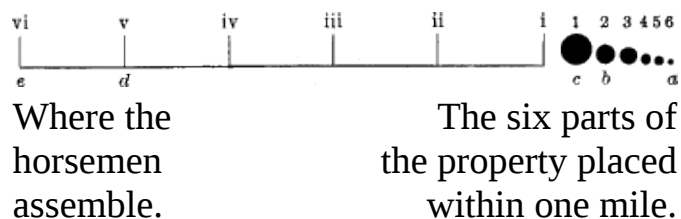
19 Þæt Estland is swȳðe mycel, and þær bið swȳðe manig  
20 burh, and on ælcere byrig bið cyning. And þær bið  
21 swȳðe mycel hunig, and fiscnað; and sē cyning and þā  
22 rīcostan men drincað mȳran meolc, and þā unspēdigan  
23 and þā þēowan drincað medo. <sup>4</sup> Þær bið swȳðe mycel  
24 gewinn betwēonan him. And ne bið ðær nāenig ealo <sup>5</sup>  
25 gebrowen mid Estum, ac þær bið medo genōh. And þær  
26 is mid Estum ðēaw, þonne þær bið man dēad, þæt hē lið  
27 inne unforbærned mid his mǣgum and frēondum mōnað,  
28 ge hwīlum twēgen; and þā cyningas, and þā oðre hēahðungene  
29 men, swā micle lencg <sup>6</sup> swā hī mǣran spēda  
30 habbað, hwīlum healf gēar þæt hī bēoð unforbærned, and  
1 licgað bufan eorðan on hyra hūsum. And ealle þā hwīle  
2 þe þæt līc bið inne, þær sceal bēon gedrync and plega,  
3 oð ðone dæg þe hī hine forbærnað. Þonne þȳ ylcan dæge  
4 þe hī hine tō þāem āde beran wyllað, þonne tōdǣlað hī  
5 his feoh, þæt þær tō lāfe bið æfter þāem gedrynce and þāem  
6 plegan, on fīf oððe syx, hwȳlum on mā, swā swā þæs fēos  
7 andēfn bið. Alęcgað hit ðonne forhwæga on ānre mīle  
8 þone mǣstan dǣl fram þāem tūne, þonne oðerne, ðonne  
9 þone þridan, oþ þe hyt eall ālēd bið on þære ānre mīle;  
10 and sceall bēon sē lǣsta dǣl nȳhst þāem tūne ðe sē dēada  
11 man on lið. Þonne sceolon <sup>7</sup> bēon gesamnode ealle ðā  
12 men ðe swyftoste hors habbað on þāem lande, forhwæga  
13 on fīf mīlum oððe on syx mīlum fram þāem fēo. Þonne  
14 ærnað hȳ ealle tōweard þāem fēo: ðonne cymeð sē man  
15 sē þæt swyftoste hors hafað tō þāem ærestan dǣle and tō  
16 þāem mǣstan, and swā ælc æfter oðrum, oþ hit bið eall  
17 genumen; and sē nimð þone lǣstan dǣl sē nȳhst þāem  
18 tūne þæt feoh gearneð. And þonne rīdeð ælc hys weg  
19 mid ðāem fēo, and hyt mōtan <sup>8</sup> habban eall; and for ðȳ

20 þær beoð þā swiftan hors ungefōge dýre. And þonne his  
21 gestreōn beoð þus eall āspended, þonne byrð man hine ūt,  
22 and forbærneð mid his wæpnum and hrægle; and swīðost  
1 ealle hys spēda hý forspendað mid þæm langan legere  
2 þæs dēadan mannes inne, and þæs þe hý be þæm wegum  
3 ālēcgað, þe ðā fremdan tō ærnað, and nimað. And þæt  
4 is mid Estum þēaw þæt þær sceal ælcas geðēodes man  
5 beon forbærned; and gyf þār<sup>9</sup> man ān bān findeð unforbærned,  
6 hī hit sceolan<sup>7</sup> miclum gebētan. And þær is mid  
7 Estum ān mægð þæt hī magon cyle gewyrca; and þý  
8 þær licgað þā dēadan men swā lange, and ne fūliað, þæt  
9 hý wyrcað þone cyle him on. And þeah man āsette  
10 twēgen fætels full ealað oððe wæteres, hý gedōð þæt  
11 ægþer bið oferfrozen, sam hit sý sumor sam winter.

108.1-4. **him ... ūs**. Note the characteristic change of person, the transition from *indirect* to *direct discourse*.

109.2. **sceal**. See § 137, Note 2 (2).

109.7. **Ālecgāð hit**. Bosworth illustrates thus:



“The horsemen assemble five or six miles from the property, at *d* or *e*, and run towards *c*; the man who has the swiftest horse, coming first to 1 or *c*, takes the first and largest part. The man who has the horse coming second takes part 2 or *b*, and so, in succession, till the least part, 6 or *a*, is taken.”

[Text version of illustration](#)

110.5-6. **man ... hī**. Here the plural **hī** refers to the singular **man**. Cf. p. 109, ll. 18-19, **ǣlc ... mōtan**. In *Exodus* xxxii, 24, we find “Whosoever hath any gold, let *them* break it off”; and Addison writes, “I do not mean that I think *anyone* to blame for taking due care of *their* health.” The construction, though outlawed now, has been common in all periods of our language. Paul remarks (*Prinzipien der Sprachgeschichte*, 3d ed., § 186) that “When a word is used as an indefinite [one, man, somebody, etc.] it is, strictly speaking, incapable of any distinction of number. Since, however, in respect of the external form, a particular number has to be chosen, it is a matter of indifference which this is.... Hence a change of numbers is common in the different languages.” Paul fails to observe that the change is always from singular to plural, not from plural to singular. See *Note on the Concord of Collectives and Indefinites* (*Anglia* XI, 1901). See p. 119, note on ll. 19-21.



- 1 = selfe.
- 2 = hēo.
- 3 = fiftiēne.
- 4 = medu.
- 5 = ealu.
- 6 = lęng.
- 7 = sculon.
- 8 = mōton.
- 9 = ðǣr.

## IV. THE STORY OF CÆDMON.

[From the so-called Alfredian version of Bede's *Ecclesiastical History*. The text generally followed is that of MS. Bodley, Tanner 10. Miller (*Early English Text Society*, No. 95, *Introd.*) argues, chiefly from the use of the prepositions, that the original O.E. MS. was Mercian, composed possibly in Lichfield (Staffordshire). At any rate, O.E. idiom is frequently sacrificed to the Latin original.

“Cædmon, as he is called, is the first Englishman whose name we know who wrote poetry in our island of England; and the first to embody in verse the new passions and ideas which Christianity had brought into England.... Undisturbed by any previous making of lighter poetry, he came fresh to the work of Christianising English song. It was a great step to make. He built the chariot in which all the new religious emotions of England could now drive along.” (Brooke, *The History of Early English Literature*, cap. XV.) There is no reason to doubt the historical existence of Cædmon; for Bede, who relates the story, lived near Whitby, and was seven years old when Cædmon died (A.D. 680)].

- 1 In ðysse abbudissan mynstre wæs sum brōðor syndriglīce
- 2 mid godcundre gife gemǣred ꝟnd geweorðad, for þon
- 3 he gewunade gerisenlīce lēoð wyrcan, þā ðe tō ǣfęstnisse <sup>1</sup>
- 4 ꝟnd tō ārfęstnisse belumpon; swā ðætte swā hwæt swā
- 5 hē of godcundum stafum þurh bōceras geleornode, þæt hē
- 6 æfter medmiclum fæce in scopgereorde mid þā mǣstan
- 7 swētnisse ꝟnd inbryrdnisse geglęngde, ꝟnd in Ęngliscgereorde
- 8 wel geworht forþ brōhte. ꝟnd for his lēoþsꝟngum
- 1 mꝟnigra mꝟnna mōd oft to worulde forhogdnisse ꝟnd tō
- 2 geþeodnisse þæs heofonlīcan līfes onbærnde wǣron. ꝟnd
- 3 ēac swelce <sup>2</sup> mꝟnige ōðre æfter him in ꝟngelþeode ongunnon
- 4 ǣfęste lēoð wyrcan, ac nǣnig hwæðre him þæt gelīce

5 dōn ne meahte; for þon hē nālæs frōm mōnnum nē ðurh  
6 mōn gelæred wæs þæt hē ðone lēoðcræft leornade, ac hē  
7 wæs godcundlice gefultumod, ƿnd þurh Godes gife þone  
8 sōngcræft onfēng; ƿnd hē for ðon nǣfre nōht lēasunge,  
9 nē idles lēopes wyrcan ne meahte, ac efne þā ān ðā ðē tō  
10 ǣfēstnisse <sup>1</sup> belumpon ƿnd his þā ǣfēstan tungan gedafenode  
11 singan.

12 Wæs hē, sē mōn, in weoruldhāde <sup>3</sup> geseted oð þā tīde þe  
13 hē wæs gelyfdre ylde, ƿnd nǣfre nǣnig lēoð geleornade.  
14 ƿnd hē for þon oft in gebēorscipe, þonne þǣr wæs blisse  
15 intinga gedēmed, þæt hēo <sup>4</sup> ealle sceolden þurh ƿndebyrdnesse  
16 be hearpan singan, þonne hē geseah þā hearpan him  
17 nēalēcan, þonne ārās hē for scōme frōm þǣm symble,  
18 ƿnd hām ēode tō his hūse. Þā hē þæt þā sumre tīde  
19 dyde, þæt hē forlēt þæt hūs þæs gebēorscipes, ƿnd ūt wæs  
1 gōngende tō nēata scipene, þāra heord him wæs þǣre  
2 nihte beboden; þā hē ðā þǣr on gelimplīcre tīde his  
3 leomu <sup>5</sup> on reſte geſette ƿnd onslēpte, þa stōd him sum  
4 mōn æt þurh swefn, ƿnd hine hālette ƿnd grētte, ƿnd hine  
5 be his nōman nēmnde: “Cædmōn, sing mē hwæthwugu.”  
6 Þā ƿndswarede hē, ƿnd cwæð: “Ne cōn ic nōht singan;  
7 ƿnd ic for þon of þyſsum gebēorscipe ūt ēode ƿnd hider  
8 gewāt, for þon ic nāht singan ne cūðe.” Eft hē cwæð sē ðe  
9 wið hine ſpreçende wæs: “Hwæðre þū meaht mē singan.”  
10 Þā cwæð hē: “Hwæt sceal ic singan?” Cwæð hē: “Sing  
11 mē frumsceaft.” Þā hē ðā þās andsware onfēng, þā  
12 ongōn hē sōna singan, in herenesse Godes Scyppendes,  
13 þā fers ƿnd þā word þe hē nǣfre ne gehȳrde, þāra ƿndebyrdnes  
14 þis is:

15 Nū sculon herigea <sup>6</sup> heofonrīces Weard,  
16 Metodes meahte ƿnd his mōdgeþanc,  
17 weorc Wuldorfæder, swā hē wundra gehwæs,  
18 ēce Drihten or onstealde.

1 Hē ǣrest scēop eorðan bearnum

2 heofon tō hrōfe, hālig Scyppend;  
3 þā middangeard mōnncynnes Weard,  
4 ēce Drihten, æfter tēode  
5 fīrum foldan, Frēa ælmihtig.

6 Ðā ārās hē frōm þæm slæpe, qnd eal þā þe hē slæpende  
7 sōng fæste in gemynde hæfde; qnd þæm wordum sōna  
8 mōnig word in þæt ilce gemet Gode wyrðes sōnges  
9 tōgeþeodde. Ðā cōm hē on morgenne tō þæm tūngerēfan,  
10 sē þe his ealdormōn wæs: sægde him hwylce gife hē  
11 onfēng; qnd hē hine sōna tō þære abbudissan gelædde,  
12 qnd hire þæt cȳðde qnd sægde. Ðā heht hēo gesōmnian  
13 ealle þā gelæredestan men qnd þā leorneras, qnd him  
14 qndweardum hēt secgan þæt swefn, qnd þæt lēoð singan,  
15 þæt ealra heora <sup>7</sup> dōme gecoren wære, hwæt oððe hwōnan  
16 þæt cumen wære. Ðā wæs him eallum gesewen, swā swā  
17 hit wæs, þæt him wære frōm Drihtne sylfum heofonlīc  
1 gifu forgifen. Ðā rehton heo <sup>4</sup> him qnd sægdon sum hālig  
2 spell qnd godcundre lāre word: bebudon him þā, gif hē  
3 meahte, þæt hē in swīnsunge lēopsōnges þæt gehwyrfde.  
4 Ðā hē ðā hæfde þā wīsan onfōngne, þā ēode hē hām tō  
5 his hūse, qnd cwōm eft on morgenne, qnd þȳ bēstan  
6 lēoðe geglēnged him āsōng qnd āgeaf þæt him beboden  
7 wæs.

8 Ðā ongan sēo abbudisse clyppan qnd lufigean <sup>8</sup> þā Godes  
9 gife in þæm men, qnd hēo hine þā mōnade qnd lærede  
10 þæt hē woruldhād forlēte qnd munuchād onfēnge: qnd  
11 hē þæt wel þafode. Qnd hēo hine in þæt mynster onfēng  
12 mid his gōdum, qnd hine geþeodde tō gesōmnunge þāra  
13 Godes þēowa, qnd heht hine lāeran þæt getæl þæs hālgan  
14 stāeres qnd spelles. Qnd hē eal þā hē in gehȳrnesse  
15 geleornian meahte, mid hine gemyndgade, qnd swā swā  
16 clæne nēten <sup>9</sup> eodorcende in þæt swēteste lēoð gehwyrfde.  
17 Qnd his sōng qnd his lēoð wæron swā wynsumu tō gehȳranne,  
18 þætte þā seolfan <sup>10</sup> his lārēowas æt his mūðe writon

19 Qnd leornodon. Sōng hē ærest be middangeardes gesceape,  
 20 Qnd bī fruman mōncynnes, Qnd eal þæt stæ̅r Genesis (þæt  
 21 is sēo æ̅reste Moyses bōc); Qnd eft bī ūtgōnge Israhēla  
 22 folces of Æ̅gypta lōnde, Qnd bī ingōnge þæs gehātlandes;  
 23 Qnd bī oðrum mōnegum spellum þæs hālgan gewrites  
 1 canōnes bōca; Qnd bī Crīstes mēniscnesse, Qnd bī his  
 2 þrōwunge, Qnd bī his ūpāstīgnesse in heofonas; Qnd bī  
 3 þæs Hālgan Gāstes cyme, Qnd þāra apostola lāre; Qnd eft  
 4 bī þæ̅m dæge þæs tōweardan dōmes, Qnd bī fyrhtu þæs  
 5 tintreglīcan wītes, Qnd bī swētnesse þæs heofonlīcan rīces,  
 6 hē monig lēoð geworhte; Qnd swelce <sup>2</sup> ēac oðer mōnig be  
 7 þæ̅m godcundan frēmsumnessum Qnd dōmum hē geworhte.  
 8 In eallum þæ̅m hē geornlīce gēmde <sup>11</sup> þæt hē mēn ātuge  
 9 frōm synna lufan Qnd mādæ̅da, Qnd tō lufan Qnd tō  
 10 geornfulnessse āwehte gōdra dæ̅da, for þon hē wæs, sē  
 11 mōn, swīpe æ̅fēst Qnd regollīcum þēodscipum ēaðmōdlīce  
 12 underþēoded; Qnd wið þæ̅m þā ðe in oðre wīsan dōn woldon,  
 13 hē wæs mid welme <sup>12</sup> micelre e̅llenwōdnisse onbærned.  
 14 Qnd hē for ðon fægre ende his līf bet̅ynde Qnd geendade.

**111.1. ðysse abbudissan.** The abbess referred to is the famous Hild, or Hilda, then living in the monastery at Streones-halh, which, according to Bede, means “Bay of the Beacon.” The Danes afterward gave it the name Whitby, or “White Town.” The surroundings were eminently fitted to nurture England’s first poet. “The natural scenery which surrounded him, the valley of the Esk, on whose sides he probably lived, the great cliffs, the billowy sea, the vast sky seen from the heights over the ocean, played incessantly upon him.” (Brooke.)

Note, also, in this connection, the numerous Latin words that the introduction of Christianity (A.D. 597) brought into the vocabulary of O.E.: **abbudisse, mynster, bisceop, Læden, prēost, æstel, mancus.**

112.4-5. The more usual order of words would be **ac nǣnig, hwæðre, ne meahte ðæt dōn gelīce him.**

112.10-11. **ƿnd his ... singan,** and which it became his (the) pious tongue to sing.

112.14-15. **blisse intinga,** for the sake of joy; but the translator has confused *laetitiaē causā* (ablative) and *laetitiaē causa* (nominative). The proper form would be **for blisse** with omission of **intingan,** just as *for my sake* is usually **for mē;** *for his (or their) sake, **for him.** Cf. Mark vi, 26: “Yet *for his oath’s sake, and for their sakes which sat with him,* he would not reject her,” **for ðǣm āðe, ƿnd for ðǣm þe him mid sǣton.** *For his sake* is frequently **for his ðingon (ðingum),** rarely **for his intingan.** **Þingon** is regularly used when the preceding genitive is a noun denoting a person: *for my wife’s sake, **for mīnes wīfes ðingon** (*Genesis* xx, 11), etc.**

112.18-19. **þæt ... þæt hē forlēt.** The substantival clause introduced by the second **þæt** amplifies by apposition the first **þæt:** *When he then, at a certain time* (instrumental case, § 98, (2)), *did that, namely, when he left the house.* The better Mn.E. would be *this ... that:* “Added yet *this* above all, *that* he shut up John in prison” (*Luke* iv, 20).

113.1-2. **þāra ... beboden.** This does not mean that Cædmon was a herdsman, but that he served in turn as did the other secular attendants at the monastery.

113.13-14. **þāra ęndebyrdnes þis is.** Bede writes *Hic est sensus, non autem ordo ipse verborum,* and gives in Latin prose a translation of the hymn from the Northumbrian dialect, in which Cædmon wrote. The O.E. version given above is, of course, not the Northumbrian original (which, however, with some variations is preserved in several of the Latin MSS. of Bede’s *History*), but a West Saxon version made also from the Northumbrian, not from the Latin.

113.15. **Nū sculon herigean**, *Now ought we to praise*. The subject **wē** is omitted in the best MSS. Note the characteristic use of synonyms, or epithets, in this bit of O.E. poetry. Observe that it is not the *thought* that is repeated, but rather the *idea*, the *concept*, God. See p. 124.

113.17. **wundra gehwæs**. See p. 140, note on **cēnra gehwylcum**.

114.7-9. **ƿnd ƿæm wordum ... tōgeƿeodde**, *and to those words he soon joined, in the same meter, many (other) words of song worthy of God*. But the translator has not only blundered over Bede's Latin (*eis mox plura in eundem modum verba Deo digna carminis adjunxit*), but sacrificed still more the idiom of O.E. The predicate should not come at the end; **in** should be followed by the dative; and for **Gode wyrðes sƿnges** the better O.E. would be **sƿnges Godes wyrðes**. When used with the dative **wyrð (weorð)** usually means *dear (= of worth) to*.

114.16. **ƿā ... gesewen**. We should expect **frōm him eallum**; but the translator has again closely followed the Latin (*visumque est omnibus*), as later (in the *Conversion of Edwin*) he renders *Talis mihi videtur* by **ƿyslīc mē is gesewen**. *Talis (ƿyslīc)* agreeing with a following *vita (līf)*. Ælfric, however, with no Latin before him, writes that John **weorð ðā him [= frōm Drihtene] inweardlice gelufod**. It would seem that in proportion as a past participle has the force of an adjective, the *to* relation may supplant the *by* relation; just as we say *unknown to* instead of *unknown by*, *unknown* being more adjectival than participial. **Gesewen**, therefore, may here be translated *visible, evident, patent (= gesynelīc, sweotol)*; and **gelufod**, *dear (= weorð, lēof)*.

A survival of adjectival **gesewen** is found in Wycliffe's *New Testament* (1 Cor. xv, 5-8): "He was *seyn to* Cephas, and aftir these thingis *to* enleuene; aftirward he was *seyn to* mo than fyue hundrid britheren togidere ... aftirward he was *seyn*

to James, and aftirward to alle the apostlis. And last of alle he was *seyñ* to me, as to a deed borun child.” The construction is frequent in Chaucer.

**115.9-10. ƿnd hēo hine ƿā mƿnade ... munuchād onfēnge.**

Hild’s advice has in it the suggestion of a personal experience, for she herself had lived half of her life (thirty-three years) “before,” says Bede, “she dedicated the remaining half to our Lord in a monastic life.”

**116.6. hē mƿnig lēoð geworhte.** The opinion is now gaining ground that of these “many poems” only the short hymn, already given, has come down to us. Of other poems claimed for Cædmon, the strongest arguments are advanced in favor of a part of the fragmentary poetical paraphrase of *Genesis*.

1 = æfæstnesse.

2 = swilce.

3 = woruldhāde.

4 = hīe.

5 = limu.

6 = herian.

7 = hiera.

8 = lufian.

9 = nīeten.

10 = selfan.

11 = gīemde.

12 = wielme.

## V. ALFRED’S PREFACE TO THE PASTORAL CARE.

[Based on the Hatton MS. Of the year 597, the *Chronicle* says: “In this year, Gregory the Pope sent into Britain Augustine with very many monks, who gospelsed [preached] God’s word to the English folk.” Gregory I, surnamed “The Great,” has ever since been considered the apostle of English Christianity, and his *Pastoral Care*, which contains instruction in conduct and doctrine for all bishops, was a work that Alfred could not afford to leave untranslated. For this translation Alfred wrote a *Preface*, the historical value of which it would be hard to overrate. In it he describes vividly the intellectual ruin that the Danes had wrought, and develops at the same time his plan for repairing

that ruin.

This *Preface* and the *Battle of Ashdown* (p. 99) show the great king in his twofold character of warrior and statesman, and justify the inscription on the base of the statue erected to him in 1877, at Wantage (Berkshire), his birth-place: “Ælfred found Learning dead, and he restored it; Education neglected, and he revived it; the laws powerless, and he gave them force; the Church debased, and he raised it; the Land ravaged by a fearful Enemy, from which he delivered it. Ælfred’s name will live as long as mankind shall respect the Past.”]

1 Ælfred kyning hāteð grētan Wærferð biscep <sup>1</sup> his wordum  
2 luflīce ƿnd frēondlīce; ƿnd ðē cȳðan hāte ðæt mē cōm  
3 swīðe oft on gemynd, hwelce <sup>2</sup> witan iū <sup>3</sup> wæron giond <sup>4</sup>  
4 Angelcynn, ægðer ge godcundra hāda ge woruldcundra;  
5 ƿnd hū gesæliglīca tīda ðā wæron giond Angelcynn; ƿnd  
6 hū ðā kyningas ðe ðone onwald hæfdon ðæs folces on  
7 ðām dagum Gode ƿnd his ærendwrecum hērsumedon <sup>5</sup>;  
8 ƿnd hū hīe ægðer ge hiora sibbe ge hiora siodo <sup>6</sup> ge hiora  
9 onweald innanbordes gehīoldon, <sup>4</sup> ƿnd ēac ūt hiora ēðel  
10 gerȳmdon; ƿnd hū him ðā spēow ægðer ge mid wīge ge  
11 mid wīsdōme; ƿnd ēac ða godcundan hādas hū giorne  
12 hīe wæron ægðer ge ymb lāre ge ymb liornunga, ge ymb  
13 ealle ðā ðīowotdōmas ðe hīe Gode dōn scoldon; ƿnd hū  
14 man ūtanbordes wīsdōm ƿnd lāre hieder on lƿnd sōhte,  
15 ƿnd hū wē hīe nū sceoldon ūte begietan, gif wē hīe habban  
16 sceoldon. Swæ <sup>7</sup> clæne hīo wæs oðfeallenu on Angelcynne  
17 ðæt swīðe fēawa wæron behionan Humbre ðe hiora ðēninga  
18 cūðen understƿndan on Eḡlisc oððe furðum ān ærendgewrit  
19 of Lædene on Eḡlisc āreccan; ƿnd ic wēne ðætte  
20 nōht mƿnige begiondan Humbre næren. Swæ <sup>7</sup> fēawa  
21 hiora wæron ðæt ic furðum āne ānlēpne <sup>8</sup> ne mæg geðencean  
1 be sūðan Tēnese, ðā ðā ic tō rīce fēng. Gode ælmihtegum  
2 sīe ðƿnc ðætte wē nū ænigne onstāl habbað  
3 lārēowa. ƿnd for ðon ic ðē bebīode ðæt ðū dō swæ <sup>7</sup> ic  
4 gelīefe ðæt ðū wille, ðæt ðū ðē ðissa woruldðinga tō ðæm  
5 geæmetige, swæ ðū oftost mæge, ðæt ðū ðone wīsdōm ðe  
6 ðē God sealde ðær ðær ðū hiene befæstan mæge, befæste.  
7 Geðenc hwelc <sup>9</sup> wītu ūs ðā becōmon for ðisse worulde, ðā



8 ðā wē hit nōhwæðer nē selfe ne lufodon, nē ēac oðrum  
9 mōnnum ne lēfdon <sup>10</sup>: ðone naman āne wē lufodon ðætte  
10 wē Crīstne wæren, qnd swīðe fēawe ðā ðēawas.

11 Ðā ic ðā ðis eall gemunde, ðā gemunde ic ēac hū ic  
12 geseah, ær ðæm ðe hit eall forhergod wæere qnd forbærned,  
13 hū ðā ciricean giond eall Angelcynn stōdon  
14 māðma qnd bōca gefylða, qnd ēac micel menigeo <sup>11</sup> Godes  
15 ðīowa; qnd ðā swīðe lýtle fiorme ðāra bōca wiston, for  
16 ðæm ðe hīe hiora nānwuht <sup>12</sup> ongietan ne meahton, for  
17 ðæm ðe hīe næron on hiora āgen geðīode awritene.  
18 Swelce <sup>13</sup> hīe cwæden: “Ure ieldran, ðā ðe ðās stōwa ær  
19 hīoldon, hīe lufodon wīsdōm, qnd ðurh ðone hīe begēaton  
20 welan, qnd ūs lēfdon. Hēr mōn mæg gīet gesīon hiora  
21 swæð, ac wē him ne cunnon æfter spyrigean, <sup>14</sup> qnd for  
22 ðæm wē habbað nū ægðer forlæten ge ðone welan ge ðone  
23 wīsdōm, for ðæm ðe wē noldon tō ðæm spore mid ūre  
24 mōde onlūtan.”

25 Ðā ic ðā ðis eall gemunde, ðā wundraðe ic swīðe swīðe  
26 ðāra gōdena wiotona <sup>15</sup> ðe gīu wæeron giond Angelcynn, qnd  
27 ðā bēc ealla be fullan geliornod hæfdon, ðæt hīe hiora ðā  
1 næne dæel noldon on hiora āgen geðīode wendan. Ac  
2 ic ðā sōna eft mē selfum andwyrde, qnd cwæð: “Hīe ne  
3 wēndon þætte æfre menn sceolden swæ <sup>7</sup> recceleāse weorðan,  
4 qnd sīo lār swæ oðfeallan; for ðære wilnunga hīe  
5 hit forlēton, qnd woldon ðæt hēr ðy māra wīsdōm on  
6 londe wæere ðy wē mā geðēoda cūðon.”

7 Ðā gemunde ic hū sīo æ wæs ærest on Ebrēisc geðīode  
8 funden, qnd eft, ðā hīe Crēacas geliornodon, ðā wendon  
9 hīe hīe on hiora āgen geðīode ealle, qnd ēac ealle oðre  
10 bēc. Qnd eft Lædenware swæ same, siððan hīe hīe geliornodon,  
11 hīe hīe wendon ealla ðurh wīse wealhstōdas  
12 on hiora āgen geðīode. Qnd ēac ealla oðra Crīstena  
13 ðīoda sumne dæel hiora on hiora āgen geðīode wendon.

14 For ðȳ mē ðyncð bętre, gif īow swǣ ðyncð, ðæt wē ēac  
15 suma bēc, ðā ðe nīedbeðearfosta sīen eallum mōnnum  
16 tō wiotonne, <sup>16</sup> ðæt wē ðā on ðæt geðīode węnden ðe wē  
17 ealle gecnāwan māgen, qnd gedōn swǣ wē swīðe ēaðe  
18 magon mid Godes fultume, gif wē ðā stilnesse habbað,  
19 ðætte eall sīo gioguð ðe nū is on Angelcynne friora  
20 mōnna, ðāra ðe ðā spēda hæbben ðæt hīe ðǣm befēolan  
21 māgen, sīen tō liornunga oðfæste, ðā hwīle ðe hīe tō  
1 nānre ōðerre note ne māgen, oð ðone first ðe hīe wel  
2 cunnen Ęnglisc gewrit ārǣdan: lǣre mōn siððan furður  
3 on Lǣdengeðīode ðā ðe mōn furðor lǣran wille, qnd tō  
4 hīerran hāde dōn wille. Ðā ic ðā gemunde hū sīo lār  
5 Lǣdengeðīodes ǣr ðissum āfeallen wæs giond Angelcynn,  
6 qnd ðeah mōnige cūðon Ęnglisc gewrit ārǣdan, ðā  
7 ongan ic ongemang oðrum mislīcum qnd manigfealdum  
8 bisgum ðisses kynerīces ðā bōc węndan on Ęnglisc ðe is  
9 genęmned on Lǣden “Pastoralis,” qnd on Ęnglisc “Hierdebōc,”  
10 hwīlum word be worde, hwīlum andgit of andgiete,  
11 swǣ swǣ ic hīe geliornode æt Plegmunde mīnum  
12 ærcebiscepe, qnd æt Assere mīnum biscepe, qnd æt Grimbolde  
13 mīnum mässeprīoste, qnd æt Iōhanne mīnum mässeprēoste.  
14 Siððan ic hīe ðā geliornod hæfde, swǣ swǣ  
15 ic hīe forstōd, qnd swǣ ic hīe andgitfullīcost āreccęan  
16 meahte, ic hīe on Ęnglisc āwęnde; qnd tō ǣlcum biscepstōle  
17 on mīnum rīce wille āne onsęndan; qnd on ǣlcra  
18 bið ān æstel, sē bið on fiftegum mancessa. Qnd ic bebīode  
19 on Godes naman ðæt nān mōn ðone æstel frōm  
20 ðǣre bēc ne dō, nē ðā bōc frōm ðǣm mynstre; uncūð hū  
21 lōnge ðǣr swǣ gelǣrede biscepas sīen, swǣ swǣ nū, Gode  
22 ðonc, wel hwǣr siendon. For ðȳ ic wolde ðætte hīe ealneg  
1 æt ðǣre stōwe wǣren, būton sē biscep hīe mid him  
2 habban wille, oððe hīo hwǣr tō lǣne sīe, oððe hwā ōðre  
3 bī wrīte.

117.1-2. **Ælfred kyning hāteð ... hāte.** Note the change from the formal and official third person (**hāteð**) to the more familiar first person (**hāte**). So Ælfric, in his *Preface to Genesis*, writes **Ælfric munuc grēt Æðelwærd ealdormann eadmōdlīce. Þū bāede mē, lēof, þæt ic,** etc.: *Ælfric, monk, greets Æthelweard, alderman, humbly. Thou, beloved, didst bid me that I,* etc.

118.5. Notice that **mæge** (l. 5) and **mæge** (l. 6) are not in the subjunctive because the sense requires it, but because they have been attracted by **gāemetige** and **befæste**. **Sīen** (p. 119, l. 15) and **hæbben** (p. 119, l. 20) illustrate the same construction.

118.9-10. *We liked only the reputation of being Christians, very few (of us) the Christian virtues.*

119.14. Alfred is here addressing the bishops collectively, and hence uses the plural **īow** (= **ēow**), not **þē**.

119.16. **ðæt wē ðā.** These three words are not necessary to the sense. They constitute the figure known as epanalepsis, in which “the same word or phrase is repeated after one or more intervening words.” **Þā** is the pronominal substitute for **suma bēc**.

119.17. **Gedōn** is the first person plural subjunctive (from infinitive **gedōn**). It and **węnden** are in the same construction. Two things seem “better” to Alfred: (1) *that we translate*, etc., (2) *that we cause*, etc.

119.19-21. **sīo gioguð ... is ... hīe ... sīen.** Notice how the collective noun, **gioguð**, singular at first both in form and function, gradually loses its oneness before the close of the sentence is reached, and becomes plural. The construction is entirely legitimate in Mn.E. Spanish is the only modern language known to me that condemns such an idiom: “Spanish ideas of congruity do not permit a collective noun, though denoting a plurality, to be accompanied by a plural

verb or adjective in the same clause” (Ramsey, *Text-Book of Modern Spanish*, § 1452).

120.2. **lǣre mōn**. See § 105, 1.

120.11-13. That none of these advisers of the king, except Plegmond, a Mercian, were natives, bears out what Alfred says about the scarcity of learned men in England when he began to reign. Asser, to whose Latin *Life of Alfred*, in spite of its mutilations, we owe almost all of our knowledge of the king, came from St. David’s (in Wales), and was made Bishop of Sherborne.

121.1. Translate **ǣt ðǣre stōwe** by *each in its place*. The change from plural **hīe** (in **hīe ... wǣren**) to singular **hīe** (in the clauses that follow) will thus be prepared for.

121.2-3. **oððe hwā oðre bī wrīte**, or *unless some one wish to copy a new one (write thereby another)*.

- 1 = bisceop.
- 2 = hwilce.
- 3 = gīu.
- 4 = For all words with *io* (*īo*), consult Glossary under *eo* (*ēo*).
- 5 = hīersumedon.
- 6 = sidu (siodu).
- 7 = swā.
- 8 = ānlīpigne.
- 9 = hwilc.
- 10 = līefdon.
- 11 = mēnigu.
- 12 = nānwiht.
- 13 = swilce.
- 14 = spyrian.
- 15 = witena.
- 16 = witanne.

# POETRY.

—◆—

## INTRODUCTORY.

—◆—

In [Section II., Structure](#), the stress markers ´ and ` are intended to display above the macron – or (rarely) breve ˇ:

´ x `

Some computers will instead show them after (to the right of) the macron. “Resolved stress” (two short syllables acting as one long) is shown with a double breve below the syllables:

ˇx

If your computer does not have this character, it will probably display a box or question mark between the two syllables.

## I. HISTORY.

### (a) Old English Poetry as a Whole.

NORTHUMBRIA was the home of Old English poetry. Beginning with Cædmon and his school A.D. 670, Northumbria maintained her poetical supremacy till A.D. 800, seven years before which date the ravages of the Danes had begun. When Alfred ascended the throne of Wessex (871), the Danes had destroyed the seats of learning throughout the whole of Northumbria. As Whitby had been “the cradle of English poetry,” Winchester (Alfred’s capital) became now the cradle of English prose; and the older poems that had survived the fire and sword of the Vikings were translated from the original Northumbrian dialect into the West Saxon dialect. It is, therefore, in the West Saxon dialect that these poems <sup>1</sup> have come down to us.

Old English poetry contains in all only about thirty thousand lines; but it

includes epic, lyric, didactic, elegiac, and allegorical poems, together with war-ballads, paraphrases, riddles, and charms. Of the five elegiac poems (*Wanderer*, *Seafarer*, *Ruin*, *Wife's Complaint*, and *Husband's Message*), the *Wanderer* is the most artistic, and best portrays the gloomy contrast between past happiness and present grief so characteristic of the Old English lyric.

Old English literature has no love poems. The central themes of its poets are battle and bereavement, with a certain grim resignation on the part of the hero to the issues of either. The movement of the thought is usually abrupt, there being a noticeable poverty of transitional particles, or connectives, "which," says Ten Brink, "are the cement of sentence-structure."

### (b) *Beowulf*.

The greatest of all Old English poems is the epic, *Beowulf*.<sup>2</sup> It consists of more than three thousand lines, and probably assumed approximately its present form in Northumbria about A.D. 700. It is a crystallization of continental myths; and, though nothing is said of England, the story is an invaluable index to the social, political, and ethical ideals of our Germanic ancestors before and after they settled along the English coast. It is most poetical, and its testimony is historically most valuable, in the character-portraits that it contains. The fatalism that runs through it, instead of making the characters weak and less human, serves at times rather to dignify and elevate them. "Fate," says *Beowulf* (l. 572), recounting his battle with the sea-monsters, "often saves an doomed man *if his courage hold out*."

"The ethical essence of this poetry," says Ten Brink, "lies principally in the conception of manly virtue, undismayed courage, the stoical encounter with death, silent submission to fate, in the readiness to help others, in the clemency and liberality of the prince toward his thanes, and the self-sacrificing loyalty with which they reward him."

NOTE 1.—Many different interpretations have been put upon the story of *Beowulf* (for argument of story, see texts). Thus Müllenhoff sees in Grendel the giant-god of the storm-tossed equinoctial sea, while *Beowulf* is the Scandinavian god Freyr, who in the spring drives back the sea and restores the land. Laistner finds the prototype of Grendel in the noxious exhalations that rise from the Frisian coast-marshes during the summer months; *Beowulf* is the wind-hero, the autumnal storm-god, who dissipates the effluvia.

1. This does not, of course, include the few short poems in the

*Chronicle*, or that portion of *Genesis* (*Genesis B*) supposed to have been put directly into West Saxon from an Old Saxon original. There still remain in Northumbrian the version of *Cædmon's Hymn*, fragments of the *Ruthwell Cross*, *Bede's Death-Song*, and the *Leiden Riddle*.

2. The word *bēowulf*, says Grimm, meant originally *bee-wolf*, or *bee-enemy*, one of the names of the woodpecker. Sweet thinks the bear was meant. But the word is almost certainly a compound of *Bēow* (cf. O.E. **bēow** = grain), a Danish demigod, and *wulf* used as a mere suffix.

## II. STRUCTURE.

### (a) Style.

In the structure of Old English poetry the most characteristic feature is the constant repetition of the idea (sometimes of the thought) with a corresponding variation of phrase, or epithet. When, for example, the Queen passes into the banquet hall in *Beowulf*, she is designated at first by her name, **Wealhþēow**; she is then described in turn as **cwēn Hrōðgāres** (*Hrothgar's queen*), **gold-hroden** (*the gold-adorned*), **frēolic wīf** (*the noble woman*), **ides Helminga** (*the Helmings' lady*), **bēag-hroden cwēn** (*the ring-adorned queen*), **mōde gepungen** (*the high-spirited*), and **gold-hroden frēolicu folc-cwēn** (*the gold-adorned, noble folk-queen*).

And whenever the sea enters largely into the poet's verse, not content with simple (uncompounded) words (such as **sæ**, **lagu**, **holm**, **strēam**, **mere**, etc.), he will use numerous other equivalents (phrases or compounds), such as **wapema gebind** (*the commingling of waves*), **lagu-flōd** (*the sea-flood*), **lagu-stræt** (*the sea-street*), **swan-rād** (*the swan-road*), etc. These compounds are usually nouns, or adjectives and participles used in a sense more appositive than attributive.

It is evident, therefore, that this abundant use of compounds, or periphrastic synonyms, grows out of the desire to repeat the idea in varying language. It is to be observed, also, that the Old English poets rarely make any studied attempt to balance phrase against phrase or clause against clause. Theirs is a repetition of



idea, rather than a parallelism of structure.

NOTE 1.—It is impossible to tell how many of these synonymous expressions had already become stereotyped, and were used, like many of the epithets in the *Iliad* and *Odyssey*, purely as padding. When, for example, the poet tells us that at the most critical moment Beowulf's sword failed him, adding in the same breath, **īren ær-gōd** (*matchless blade*), we conclude that the bard is either nodding or parroting.

## (b) Meter.

[Re-read § 10, (3).]

### *Primary Stress.*

Old English poetry is composed of certain rhythmically ordered combinations of accented and unaccented syllables. The accented syllable (the arsis) is usually long, and will be indicated by the macron with the acute accent over it (´); when short, by the breve with the same accent (˘). The unaccented syllable or syllables (the thesis) may be long or short, and will be indicated by the oblique cross (×).

### *Secondary Stress.*

A secondary accent, or stress, is usually put upon the second member of compound and derivative nouns, adjectives, and adverbs. This will be indicated by the macron with the grave accent, if the secondary stress falls on a long syllable (̀); by the breve with the same accent, if the secondary stress falls on a short syllable (˘). Nouns:

**Hrōðgāres** (´̀×), **fēondgrāpum** (´̀×), **frēomāægum** (´̀×),  
**Ēast-Dęna** (˘˘×), **Helminga** (´̀×), **Scyldinga** (´̀×), **ānhaga** (˘˘×),  
**Ecgpēowes** (´̀×), **sinc-fato** (˘˘×).

Adjectives: <sup>1</sup>

**āēghwylcne** (´̀×), **þrīsthȳdig** (´̀×), **gold-hroden** (˘˘×),  
**drēorigne** (´̀×), **gyldenne** (´̀×), **ōðerne** (´̀×), **gāestlicum** (´̀×),  
**wynsume** (˘˘×), **āenigne** (´̀×).

Adverbs: <sup>2</sup>

**unsōfte** (´̀×), **heardlice** (´̀×), **sęmninga** (´̀×).

The Old English poets place also a secondary accent upon the ending of present participles (-**ende**), and upon the penultimate of weak verbs of the second class (§ 130), provided the root-syllable is long. <sup>3</sup> Present participles:

**slæpendne** (˘˘×), **wīs-hycgende** (˘˘˘×), **flēotendra** (˘˘×),  
**hrēosende** (˘˘×).

Weak verbs:

**swynsode** (˘˘×), **þancode** (˘˘×), **wānigean** (˘˘×), **scēawian** (˘˘×),  
**scēawige** (˘˘×), **hlīfian** (˘˘×).

### *Resolved Stress.*

A short accented syllable followed in the same word by an unaccented syllable (usually short also) is equivalent to one long accented syllable (˘× = ˘˘). This is known as a resolved stress, and will be indicated thus, ˘˘;

**hæleða** (˘˘˘), **guman** (˘˘), **Gode** (˘˘), **sęle-ful** (˘˘˘), **ides** (˘˘),  
**fyrena** (˘˘˘), **maðelode** (˘˘˘), **hogode** (˘˘˘), **mægen-ellen** (˘˘˘˘),  
**hige-þihtigne** (˘˘˘˘), **Metudes** (˘˘˘), **lagulāde** (˘˘˘˘),  
**unlyfigendes** (˘˘˘˘), **biforan** (˘˘˘), **forþolian** (˘˘˘˘), **baðian** (˘˘˘),  
**worolde** (˘˘˘).

Resolution of stress may also attend secondary stresses:

**sinc-fato** (˘˘˘), **dryht-sęle** (˘˘˘), **ferðloca** (˘˘˘), **forðwege** (˘˘˘).

### *The Normal Line.*

Every normal line of Old English poetry has four primary accents, two in the first half-line and two in the second half-line. These half-lines are separated by the cesura and united by alliteration, the alliterative letter being found in the first stressed syllable of the second half-line. This syllable, therefore, gives the cue to the scansion of the whole line. It is also the only alliterating syllable in the second half-line. The first half-line, however, usually has two alliterating syllables, but frequently only one (the ratio being about three to two in the following selections). When the first half-line contains but one alliterating syllable, that syllable marks the first stress, rarely the second. The following

lines are given in the order of their frequency:

- (1) **þǣr wæs háleða hléahtor; hlýn swýnsode.**
- (2) **móde gepúngen, médo-ful ætbær.**
- (3) **sóna þæt onfúnde fýrena hýrde.**

Any initial vowel or diphthong may alliterate with any other initial vowel or diphthong; but a consonant requires the same consonant, except **st**, **sp**, and **sc**, each of which alliterates only with itself.

Remembering, now, that either half-line (especially the second) may begin with several unaccented syllables (these syllables being known in types A, D, and E as the *anacrusis*), but that neither half-line can end with more than one unaccented syllable, the student may begin at once to read and properly accentuate Old English poetry. It will be found that the alliterative principle does not operate mechanically, but that the poet employs it for the purpose of emphasizing the words that are really most important. Sound is made subservient to sense.

When, from the lack of alliteration, the student is in doubt as to what word to stress, let him first get the exact meaning of the line, and then put the emphasis on the word or words that seem to bear the chief burden of the poet's thought.

NOTE 1.—A few lines, rare or abnormal in their alliteration or lack of alliteration, may here be noted. In the texts to be read, there is one line with no alliteration: *Wanderer* 58; three of the type *a* ... *b* | *a* ... *b*: *Beowulf* 654, 830, 2746; one of the type *a* ... *a* | *b* ... *a*: *Beowulf* 2744; one of the type *a* ... *a* | *b* ... *c*: *Beowulf* 2718; and one of the type *a* ... *b* | *c* ... *a*: *Beowulf* 2738.

### *The Five Types.*

By an exhaustive comparative study of the metrical unit in Old English verse, the half-line, Professor Eduard Sievers,<sup>4</sup> of the University of Leipzig, has shown that there are only five types, or varieties, employed. These he classifies as follows, the perpendicular line serving to separate the so-called feet, or measures:

1. A        ˊ × | ˊ ×
2. B        × ˊ | × ˊ
3. C        × ˊ | ˊ ×
4. D { D<sup>1</sup> ˊ | ˊ ˋ ×
- D<sup>2</sup> ˊ | ˊ × ˋ

$$5. E \begin{cases} E^1 \acute{\text{ }} \grave{\text{ }} \times | \acute{\text{ }} \\ E^2 \acute{\text{ }} \times \grave{\text{ }} | \acute{\text{ }} \end{cases}$$

It will be seen (1) that each half-line contains two, and only two, feet; (2) that each foot contains one, and only one, primary stress; (3) that A is trochaic, B iambic; (4) that C is iambic-trochaic; (5) that D and E consist of the same feet but in inverse order.

### *The Five Types Illustrated.*

[All the illustrations, as hitherto, are taken from the texts to be read. The figures prefixed indicate whether first or second half-line is cited. B = *Beowulf*; W = *Wanderer*.]

#### 1. TYPE A, $\acute{\text{ }} \times | \acute{\text{ }} \times$

Two or more unaccented syllables (instead of one) may intervene between the two stresses, but only one may follow the last stress. If the thesis in either foot is the second part of a compound it receives, of course, a secondary stress.

- |   |   |
|---|---|
| (2) <b>ful gesealde</b> , B. 616,                           | $\acute{\text{ }} \times   \acute{\text{ }} \times$   |
| (1) <b>wīdre gewindan</b> , B. 764,                         | $\acute{\text{ }} \times \times   \acute{\text{ }} \times$  |
| (1) <sup>5</sup> <b>Gemunde þā sē gōða</b> , B. 759,        | $\times   \acute{\text{ }} \times \times \times   \acute{\text{ }} \times$                          |
| (1) <sup>5</sup> <b>swylce hē on ealder-dagum</b> , B. 758, | $\times \times \times \times   \acute{\text{ }} \times   \acute{\text{ }} \times$                   |
| (1) <b>ȳpde swā þisne eardgeard</b> , W. 85,                | $\acute{\text{ }} \times \times \times \times   \acute{\text{ }} \grave{\text{ }} \grave{\text{ }}$ |
| (1) <b>wīs-fæst wordum</b> , B. 627,                        | $\acute{\text{ }} \grave{\text{ }}   \acute{\text{ }} \times$                                       |
| (1) <b>gryre-lēoð galan</b> , B. 787,                       | $\acute{\text{ }} \times \grave{\text{ }}   \acute{\text{ }} \times$                                |
| (2) <b>somod ætgædre</b> , W. 39,                           | $\acute{\text{ }} \times \times   \acute{\text{ }} \times$  |
| (1) <b>duguðe ond geogoðe</b> , B. 622,                     | $\acute{\text{ }} \times \times \times   \acute{\text{ }} \times \times$                            |
| (1) <b>fæger fold-bold</b> , B. 774,                        | $\acute{\text{ }} \times   \acute{\text{ }} \grave{\text{ }} \grave{\text{ }}$                      |
| (1) <b>atelic egesa</b> , B. 785,                           | $\acute{\text{ }} \times \grave{\text{ }}   \acute{\text{ }} \times \times$                         |
| (2) <b>goldwine mīnne</b> , W. 22,                          | $\acute{\text{ }} \times \times   \acute{\text{ }} \times$  |
| (1) <b>egesān þēon</b> [ $>$ *þīhan: § 118], B. 2737,       | $\acute{\text{ }} \times \times   \acute{\text{ }} \times$  |

NOTE.—Rare forms of A are  $\acute{\text{ }} \grave{\text{ }} \times | \acute{\text{ }} \times$  (does not occur in texts),  $\acute{\text{ }} \grave{\text{ }} \times | \acute{\text{ }} \grave{\text{ }}$  (occurs once, B. 781 (1)), and  $\acute{\text{ }} \times \grave{\text{ }} | \acute{\text{ }} \times$  (once, B. 2743 (1)).

#### 2. TYPE B, $\times \acute{\text{ }} | \times \acute{\text{ }}$

Two, but not more than two, unaccented syllables may intervene between the stresses. The type of B most frequently occurring is  $\times \times \acute{\text{ }} | \times \acute{\text{ }}$ .

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| (1) <b>ond þā frēolic wīf</b> , B. 616, | $\times \times \acute{\text{ }}   \times \acute{\text{ }}$ |
|---|--|

- |   |   |
|---|---|
| (2) <b>hē on lust geþeah</b> , B. 619,                | $\times \times \acute{\quad}   \times \acute{\quad}$  |
| (2) <b>þā se æðeling gīong</b> , B. 2716,             | $\times \times \overset{\text{e}}{\times}   \times \acute{\quad}$                                       |
| (2) <b>seah on ęnta geweorc</b> , B. 2718,            | $\times \times \acute{\quad}   \times \times \acute{\quad}$   |
| (1) <b>ofer flōda genipu</b> , B. 2809,               | $\times \times \acute{\quad}   \times \times$<br>$\quad \quad \quad \overset{\text{e}}{\times}$         |
| (1) <b>forþam mē wītan ne þearf</b> , B. 2742,        | $\times \times \times \acute{\quad}   \times \times \acute{\quad}$                                      |
| (2) <b>þaes þe hire se willa gelamp</b> , B. 627,     | $\times \times \times \times \times   \times \times \acute{\quad}$<br>$\quad \quad \quad \acute{\quad}$ |
| (1) <b>forþon ne mæg weorþan wīs</b> , W. 64,         | $\times \times \times \times \acute{\quad}   \times \acute{\quad}$                                      |
| (1) <b>Nāefre ic ānegum [= āen'gum] meṅ</b> , B. 656, | $\times \times \times \acute{\quad}   \times \acute{\quad}$   |

NOTE.—In the last half-line Sievers substitutes the older form **ānegum**, and supposes elision of the **e** in **Nāefre** (= **Nāefr-ic**:  $\times \times \acute{\quad} | \times \acute{\quad}$ ).

### 3. TYPE C, $\times \acute{\quad} | \acute{\quad} \times$

The conditions of this type are usually satisfied by compound and derivative words, and the second stress (not so strong as the first) is frequently on a short syllable. The two arses rarely alliterate. As in B, two unaccented syllables in the first thesis are more common than one.

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| (1) <b>þæt hēo on ānigne</b> , B. 628,        | $\times \times \times \acute{\quad}   \acute{\quad} \times$              |
| (1) <b>þæt ic ānunga</b> , B. 635,            | $\times \times \acute{\quad}   \acute{\quad} \times$                     |
| (2) <b>ēode gold-hroden</b> , B. 641,         | $\times \times \acute{\quad}   \overset{\text{e}}{\times}$               |
| (1) <b>gemyne māērðo</b> , B. 660,            | $\times \overset{\text{e}}{\times}   \acute{\quad} \times$               |
| (1) <b>on þisse meodu-healle</b> , B. 639,    | $\times \times \times \overset{\text{e}}{\times}   \acute{\quad} \times$ |
| (2) <b>æt brimes nosan</b> , B. 2804,         | $\times \overset{\text{e}}{\times}   \overset{\text{e}}{\times}$         |
| (2) <b>æt Wealhþéon [= -þēowan]</b> , B. 630, | $\times \acute{\quad}   \acute{\quad} \times$                            |
| (1) <b>geond lagulāde</b> , W. 3,             | $\times \overset{\text{e}}{\times}   \acute{\quad} \times$               |
| (1) <b>Swā cwæð eardstapa</b> , W. 6,         | $\times \times \acute{\quad}   \overset{\text{e}}{\times}$               |
| (2) <b>ēalā byrnwiga</b> , W. 94,             | $\times \times \acute{\quad}   \overset{\text{e}}{\times}$               |
| (2) <b>nō þær fela bringeð</b> , W. 54,       | $\times \times \overset{\text{e}}{\times}   \acute{\quad} \times$        |

### 4. TYPE D, $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} D^1 \acute{\quad} | \acute{\quad} \grave{\quad} \times \\ D^2 \acute{\quad} | \acute{\quad} \times \grave{\quad} \end{array} \right.$

Both types of D may take one unaccented syllable between the two primary

stresses ( $\acute{\times} | \acute{\grave{\times}}, \acute{\times} | \acute{\times} \grave{\times}$ ). The secondary stress in  $D^1$  falls usually on the second syllable of a compound or derivative word, and this syllable (as in C) is frequently short.

(a)  $D^1 \acute{\times} | \acute{\grave{\times}} \times$

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| (1) <b>cwēn Hrōðgāres</b> , B. 614,                  | $\acute{\times}   \acute{\grave{\times}} \times$          |
| (2) <b>dǣl æghwylcne</b> , B. 622,                   | $\acute{\times}   \acute{\grave{\times}} \times$          |
| (1) <b>Bēowulf maðelode</b> , B. 632,                | $\acute{\times}   \acute{\times} \grave{\times}$          |
| (2) <b>slāt unwearnum</b> , B. 742,                  | $\acute{\times}   \acute{\grave{\times}} \times$          |
| (1) <b>wrāpra wælsleahta</b> , W. 7,                 | $\acute{\times}   \acute{\grave{\times}} \times$          |
| (1) <b>wōd wintercearig</b> [= wint'rcearig], W. 24, | $\acute{\times}   \acute{\times} \grave{\times}$          |
| (1) <b>sōhte seþe drēorig</b> , W. 25,               | $\acute{\times}   \acute{\times} \grave{\times}$          |
| (1) <b>ne sōhte searo-nīðas</b> , B. 2739,           | $\times   \acute{\times}   \acute{\times} \grave{\times}$ |

NOTE.—There is one instance in the texts (B. 613, (1)) of apparent  $\acute{\times} \times | \acute{\times} \times$ : **word wǣron wynsume**. (The triple alliteration has no significance. The sense, besides, precludes our stressing **wǣron**.) The difficulty is avoided by bringing the line under the A type:  $\acute{\times} \times | \acute{\times} \times$ .

(b)  $D^2 \acute{\times} | \acute{\times} \grave{\times}$

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| (2) <b>Forð nēar ætstōp</b> , B. 746,     | $\acute{\times}   \acute{\times} \grave{\times}$ |
| (2) <b>eorl furður stōp</b> , B. 762,     | $\acute{\times}   \acute{\times} \grave{\times}$ |
| (2) <b>Deþum eallum wearð</b> , B. 768,   | $\acute{\times}   \acute{\times} \grave{\times}$ |
| (1) <b>grētte Gēata lēod</b> , B. 626,    | $\acute{\times}   \acute{\times} \grave{\times}$ |
| (1) <b>ǣnig yrfe-weard</b> , B. 2732,     | $\acute{\times}   \acute{\times} \grave{\times}$ |
| (1) <b>hrēosan hrīm and snāw</b> , W. 48, | $\acute{\times}   \acute{\times} \grave{\times}$ |
| (2) <b>swimmað eft on weg</b> , W. 53,    | $\acute{\times}   \acute{\times} \grave{\times}$ |

Very rarely is the thesis in the second foot expanded.

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| (2) <b>þegn ungemete till</b> , B. 2722,   | $\acute{\times}   \acute{\times} \times \times \grave{\times}$ |
| (1) <b>hrūsan heolster biwrāh</b> , W. 23, | $\acute{\times}   \acute{\times} \times \times \grave{\times}$ |

$$5. \text{TYPE E, } \begin{cases} E^1 \acute{\times} \grave{\times} \times | \acute{\times} \\ E^2 \acute{\times} \times \grave{\times} | \acute{\times} \end{cases}$$

The secondary stress in  $E^1$  falls frequently on a short syllable, as in  $D^1$ .

(a)  $E^1 \acute{\times} \grave{\times} \times | \acute{\times}$

- (1)

wyrmlicum fāh, W. 98,	´ ˘ ×   ´
(2) medo-ful ætbær, B. 625,	˘ × ˘ ×   ´
(1) sǣ-bāt gesæt, B. 634,	´ ˘ ×   ´
(1) sige-folca swēg, B. 645,	˘ × ˘ ×   ´
(2) Norð-De-num stōd, B. 784,	´ ˘ ×   ´
(1) fēond-grāpum fæst, B. 637,	´ ˘ ×   ´
(2) wyn eal gedrēas, W. 36,	´ ˘ ×   ´
(2) feor oft gemōn, W. 90,	´ ˘ ×   ´

As in D<sup>2</sup>, the thesis in the first foot is very rarely expanded.

(1) wīn-ærnes geweald, B. 655,	´ ˘ × ×   ´
(1) Hafa nū ōnd geheald, B. 659,	˘ × ˘ × ×   ´
(1) searo-þōncum besmiðod, B. 776,	˘ × ˘ × ×   ˘ ×

NOTE.—Our ignorance of Old English sentence-stress makes it impossible for us to draw a hard-and-fast line in all cases between D<sup>2</sup> and E<sup>1</sup>. For example, in these half-lines (already cited),

wyn eal gedrēas  
feor oft gemōn  
Forð nēar ætstōp

if we throw a strong stress on the adverbs that precede their verbs, the type is D<sup>2</sup>. Lessen the stress on the adverbs and increase it on the verbs, and we have E<sup>1</sup>. The position of the adverbs furnishes no clue; for the order of words in Old English was governed not only by considerations of relative emphasis, but by syntactic and euphonic considerations as well.

(b) E<sup>2</sup> ´ × ˘ | ´

This is the rarest of all types. It does not occur in the texts, there being but one instance of this type (l. 2437 (2)), and that doubtful, in the whole of *Beowulf*.

### *Abnormal Lines.*

The lines that fall under none of the five types enumerated are comparatively few. They may be divided into two classes, (1) hypermetrical lines, and (2) defective lines.

#### (1) HYPERMETRICAL LINES.

Each hypermetrical half-line has usually three stresses, thus giving six stresses to the whole line instead of two. These lines occur chiefly in groups, and mark increased range and dignity in the thought. Whether the half-line be first or

second, it is usually of the A type without anacrusis. To this type belong the last five lines of the *Wanderer*. Lines 92 and 93 are also unusually long, but not hypermetrical. The first half-line of 65 is hypermetrical, a fusion of A and C, consisting of ( $\acute{\times}\times\times\grave{\_} | \acute{\times}$ ).

## (2) DEFECTIVE LINES.

The only defective lines in the texts are B. 748 and 2715 (the second half-line in each). As they stand, these half-lines would have to be scanned thus:

<b>rǣhte ongēan</b>	$\acute{\times}   \times \acute{\_}$
<b>bealo-nīð wēoll</b>	$\grave{\times} \grave{\_}   \acute{\_}$

Sievers emends as follows:

<b>rǣhte tōgēanes</b>	$\acute{\times} \times   \acute{\times} = A$
<b>bealo-nīðe wēoll</b>	$\grave{\times} \acute{\times}   \acute{\_} = E^1$

These defective half-lines are made up of syntactic combinations found on almost every page of Old English prose. That they occur so rarely in poetry is strong presumptive evidence, if further evidence were needed, in favor of the adequacy of Sievers' five-fold classification.

NOTE.—All the lines that could possibly occasion any difficulty to the student have been purposely cited as illustrations under the different types. If these are mastered, the student will find it an easy matter to scan the lines that remain.

1. It will be seen that the adjectives are chiefly derivatives in **-ig**, **-en**, **-er**, **-līc**, and **-sum**.
2. Most of the adverbs belonging here end in **-līce**, **-unga**, and **-inga**, § 93, (1), (2): such words as **æt-gǣdere**, **on-gēan**, **on-wég**, **tō-gēanes**, **tō-míddes**, etc., are invariably accented as here indicated.
3. It will save the student some trouble to remember that this means long by nature (**līcodon**), or long by position (**swynsode**), or long by resolution of stress (**maðelode**),—see next paragraph.
4. Sievers' two articles appeared in the *Beiträge zur Geschichte der deutschen Sprache und Literatur*, Vols. X (1885) and XII (1887). A brief summary, with slight modifications, is found in the same author's *Altgermanische Metrik*, pp. 120-144 (1893).



Before attempting to employ Sievers' types, the student would do well to read several pages of Old English poetry, taking care to accentuate according to the principles already laid down. In this way his ear will become accustomed to the rhythm of the line, and he will see more clearly that Sievers' work was one primarily of systematization. Sievers himself says: "I had read Old English poetry for years exactly as I now scan it, and long before I had the slightest idea that what I did instinctively could be formulated into a system of set rules."  
(*Altgermanische Metrik, Vorwort*, p. 10.)

5. The first perpendicular marks the limit of the anacrusis.

## SELECTIONS FOR READING.



### VI. EXTRACTS FROM BEOWULF.

#### THE BANQUET IN HEOROT. [Lines 612-662.]

[The Heyne-Socin text has been closely followed. I have attempted no original emendations, but have deviated from the Heyne-Socin edition in a few cases where the Grein-Wülker text seemed to give the better reading.]

The argument preceding the first selection is as follows: Hrothgar, king of the Danes, or Scyldings, elated by prosperity, builds a magnificent hall in which to feast his retainers; but a monster, Grendel by name, issues from his fen-haunts, and night after night carries off thane after thane from the banqueting hall. For twelve years these ravages continue. At last Beowulf, nephew of Hygelac, king of the Geats (a people of South Sweden), sails with fourteen chosen companions to Dane-land, and offers his services to the aged Hrothgar. "Leave me alone in the hall to-night," says Beowulf. Hrothgar accepts Beowulf's proffered aid, and before the dread hour of visitation comes, the time is spent in wassail. The banquet scene follows.]

Þær wæs hæleþa hleahtor, hlyn swynsode,  
word wæron wynsume. Eode Wealhþēow forð,  
cwēn Hrōðgāres, cynna gemyndig;  
[615] grētte gold-hroden guman on healle,  
ꝛnd þā frēolīc wīf ful gesealde  
ærest Eāst-Dena ēþel-wearde,  
bæd hine blīðne æt þære bēor-þege,  
lēodum lēofne; hē on lust geþeah  
[620] symbel ꝛnd seþle-ful, sige-rōf kyning.  
Ymb-eode þā ides Helminga  
duguðe ꝛnd geogoðe dæġl æghwylcne,  
sinc-fato sealde, oð þæt sæl ālamp

þæt hīo <sup>1</sup> Bēowulfe,    bēag-hroden cwēn,  
 [625] mōde geþungen,    medo <sup>2</sup>-ful ætbær;  
 grētte Gēata lēod,    Gode þancode  
 wīs-fæst wordum,    þæs þe hire se willa gelamp,  
 þæt hēo on ænigne    eorl gelyfde  
 fyrena frōfre.    Hē þæt ful geþeah,  
 [630] wæl-rēow wiga,    æt Wealhþēon,  
 ƿnd þā gyddode    gūðe gefýsed;  
 Bēowulf maðelode,    bearn Ecgþēowes:  
 “Ic þæt hogode,    þā ic on holm gestāh,  
 sǣ-bāt gesæt    mid mīnra sęcga gedriht,  
 [635] þæt ic ānunga    ēowra lēoda  
 willan geworhte,    oððe on wæl crunge  
 fēond-grāpum fæst.    Ic gefremman sceal  
 eorlic ellen,    oððe ęnde-dæg  
 on þisse meodu <sup>2</sup>-healle    mīnne gebīdan.”  
 [640] Þām wīfe þā word    wel līcodon,  
 gilp-cwide Gēates;    ēode gold-hroden  
 frēolicu folc-cwēn    tō hire frēan sittan.  
 Þā wæs eft swā ær    inne on healle  
 þrýð-word sprecen, <sup>3</sup>    þēod on sǣlum,  
 [645] sige-folca swēg,    oþ þæt sęmninga  
 sunu Healfðenes    sēcean wolde  
 æfen-ræste;    wiste þāēm āhlǣcan <sup>4</sup>  
 tō þāēm hēah-şęle    hilde geþinged,  
 siððan hīe sunnan lēoht    gesēon *ne* meahton  
 [650] oððe nīpende    niht ofer ealle,  
 scadu-helma gesceapu    scrīðan cwōman, <sup>5</sup>  
 wan under wolcnum.    Werod eall ārās;  
 grētte þā *giddum*    guma oðerne  
 Hrōðgār Bēowulf,    ƿnd him hǣl ābēad,  
 [655] wīn-ærnes geweald,    ƿnd þæt word ācwæð:  
 “Nǣfre ic ænegum <sup>6</sup> męn    ær ālyfde,  
 siððan ic hƿnd ƿnd rƿnd    hębban mihte,

ðrȳþ-ærn Deṇa būton þē nū þā.  
Hafa nū Ɔnd geheald hūsa sēlest,  
[660] gemyne mǣrþo, <sup>7</sup> mægen-ellen cȳð,  
waca wið wrāðum. Ne bið þē wilna gād,  
gif þū þæt ellen-weorc aldre <sup>8</sup> gedīgest.”

**623. sinc-fato sealde.** Banning (*Die epischen Formeln im Beowulf*) shows that the usual translation, *gave costly gifts*, must be given up; or, at least, that the *costly gifts* are nothing more than *beakers of mead*. The expression is an epic formula for *passing the cup*.

**638-39. ęnde-ðæg ... mīnne.** This unnatural separation of noun and possessive is frequent in O.E. poetry, but almost unknown in prose.

**641-42. ēode ... sittan.** The poet might have employed **tō sittanne** (§ 108, (1)); but in poetry the infinitive is often used for the gerund. Alfred himself uses the infinitive or the gerund to express purpose after **gān**, **gƆngan**, **cuman**, and **sęndan**.

**647-51. wiste ... cwōman.** A difficult passage, even with Thorpe's inserted **ne**; but there is no need of putting a period after **geþinged**, or of translating **oððe** by *and*: *He (Hrothgar) knew that battle was in store (geþinged) for the monster in the high hall, after [= as soon as] they could no longer see the sun's light, or [= that is] after night came darkening over all, and shadowy figures stalking.* The subject of **cwōman** [= **cwōmon**] is **niht** and **gesceapu**.

The student will note that the infinitive (**scriðan**) is here employed as a present participle after a verb of motion (**cwōman**). This construction with **cuman** is frequent in prose and poetry. The infinitive expresses the kind of motion: **ic cōm drīfan** = *I came driving*.

1 = hēo.

- 2 = medu-.
- 3 = gesprecen.
- 4 = āglǣcan.
- 5 = cwōmon.
- 6 = ænigum.
- 7 = mǣrþe (acc. sing.).
- 8 = ealdre (instr. sing.).

THE FIGHT BETWEEN BEOWULF AND GRENDEL. [Lines 740-837.]

[The warriors all retire to rest except Beowulf. Grendel stealthily enters the hall. From his eyes gleams "a luster unlovely, likest to fire." The combat begins at once.]

[740] Ne þæt se āglǣca yldan þōhte,  
ac hē gefēng hraðe forman sīðe  
slǣpendne rinc, slāt unwearnum,  
bāt bān-locan, blōd ēdrum dranc,  
syn-snǣdum swealh; sōna hæfde  
[745] unlyfigendes eal gefeormod  
fēt ƿnd folma. Forð nēar ætstōp,  
nam þā mid handa hige-þihtigne  
rinc on ræste; rǣhte ongēan  
fēond mid folme; hē onfēng hraþe  
[750] inwit-þancum ƿnd wið earm gesæt.  
Sōna þæt onfunde fyrena hyrde,  
þæt hē ne mētte middan-geardes,  
eorðan scēatta, on ęlran męn  
mund-gripe māran; hē on mōde wearð  
[755] forht, on ferhðe; nō þȳ ær fram meahte.  
Hyge wæs him hin-fūs, wolde on heolster flēon,  
sēcan dēofla gedræg; ne wæs his drohtoð þær,  
swylce hē on ealder 1-dagum ær gemētte.  
Gemunde þā se gōda mæg Higelāces  
[760] æfen-spræce, ūp-lang āstōd  
ƿnd him fæste wiðfēng; fingras burston;  
eoten wæs ūt-weard; eorl furþur stōp.

Mynte se mǣra, hwǣr hē meahthe swā,  
 wīdre gewindan ƿnd on weg þanon  
 [765] flēon on fēn-hopu; wiste his fingra gewæld  
 on grames grāpum. Þæt wæs gēocor sīð,  
 þæt se hearm-scaþa tō Heorute <sup>2</sup> ātēah.  
Dryht-sele dynede; Denum eallum wearð  
 ceaster-būendum, cēnra gehwylcum,  
 [770] eorlum ealu-scerwen. Yrre wǣron bēgen  
 rēpe rēn-weardas. Reƿced hlynsode;  
 þā wæs wundor micel, þæt se wīn-sele  
 wiðhæfde heaþo-dēorum, þæt hē on hrūsan ne fēol,  
 fǣger fold-bold; ac hē þæs fæste wæs  
 [775] innan ƿnd ūtan īren-bendum  
 searo-þƿncum besmiðod. Þǣr fram sylle ābēag  
 medu-benc mƿnig, mīne gefrǣge,  
 golde geregnad, þǣr þā graman wunnon;  
 þæs ne wēndon ǣr witan Scyldinga,  
 [780] þæt hit ā mid gemete manna ǣnig,  
 betlic ƿnd bān-fāg, tōbreca meahthe,  
 listum tōlūcan, nympe līges fæðm  
 swulge on swaþule. Swēg ūp āstāg  
 nīwe geneahhe; Norð-Denum stōd  
 [785] atelic egesa, ānra gehwylcum,  
 þāra þe of wealle wōp gehyrdon,  
 gryre-lēoð galan Godes ƿndsacan,  
 sige-lēasne sang, sār wānigean  
 helle hæfton. <sup>3</sup> Hēold hine fæste,  
 [790] sē þe manna wæs mægene strēngest  
 on þǣm dæge þysses līfes.  
 Nolde eorla hlēo ǣnige þinga  
 þone cwealm-cuman cwicne forlǣtan,  
 nē his līf-dagas lēoda ǣnigum  
 [795] nytte tealde. Þǣr genehost brǣgd  
 eorl Bēowulfes ealde lāfe,

wolde frēa-drihtnes feorh ealgian,  
 mǣres þeodnes, ðær hīe meahton swā.  
 Hīe ðæt ne wiston, þā hīe gewin drugon,  
 [800] heard-hicgende hilde-męcgas,  
 ƿnd on healfa gehwone hēawan þohton,  
 sāwle sēcan: þone syn-scaðan  
 ænig ofer eorðan irenna cyst,  
 gūþ-billa nān, grētan nolde;  
 [805] ac hē siges-wǣpnum forsworen hæfde,  
 ęcga gehwylcre. Scolde his aldor 4-gedāl  
 on ðæm dæge þysses līfes  
 earmlic wurðan 5 ƿnd se ęllor-gāst  
 on fēonda geweald feor siðian.  
 [810] Ðā þæt onfunde, sē þe fela æror  
 mōdes myrðe manna cynne  
 fyrene gefremede (hē wæs fāg wið God),  
 þæt him se līc-hƿma læstan nolde,  
 ac hine se mōdega 6 mæg Hygelāces  
 [815] hæfde be hƿnda; wæs gehwæper oðrum  
 lifigende lāð. Līc-sār gebād  
 atol æglæca 7; him on eaxle wearð  
 syn-dolh sweetol; seonowe onsprungon;  
 burston bān-locan. Bēowulfe wearð  
 [820] gūð-hrēð gyfeðe. Scolde Gręndel þƿnan  
 feorh-sēoc flēon under fęn-hleoðu, 8  
 sēcean wyn-lēas wīc; wiste þe geornor,  
 þæt his aldres 9 wæs ęnde gegƿngen,  
 dōgera dæg-rīm. Dęnum eallum wearð  
 [825] æfter þām wæl-ræse willa gelumpen.  
 Hæfde þā gefælsod, sē þe ær feorran cōm,  
 snotor ƿnd swyð-ferhð, sele Hrōðgāres,  
 genęred wið nīðe. Niht-weorce gefeh,  
 ęllen-mærþum; hæfde Ēast-Dęnum  
 [830] Gēat-męcga lēod gilp gelæsted;

swylce oncyððe ealle gebētte,  
inwid-sorge, þe hīe ær drugon  
ƿnd for þrēa-nȳdum þolian scoldon,  
torn unly̅tel. Ðæt wæs tācen sweotol,  
[835] syððan hilde-dēor hƿnd ālēgde,  
earn ƿnd eaxle (þæ̅r wæs eal geador  
Grendles grāpe) under gēapne hrōf.

740. **þæt**, the direct object of **yldan**, refers to the contest about to ensue. Beowulf, in the preceding lines, was wondering how it would result.

746. **ætstōp**. The subject of this verb and of **nam** is Grendel; the subject of the three succeeding verbs (**ræhte**, **onfēng**, **gesæt**) is Beowulf.

751-52. The O.E. poets are fond of securing emphasis or of stimulating interest by indirect methods of statement, by suggesting more than they affirm. This device often appears in their use of negatives (**ne**, l. 13; p. 140, l. 3; **nō**, p. 140, l. 1), and in the unexpected prominence that they give to some minor detail usually suppressed because understood; as where the narrator, wishing to describe the terror produced by Grendel's midnight visits to Heorot, says (ll. 138-139), "Then was it easy to find one who elsewhere, more commodiously, sought rest for himself." It is hard to believe that the poet saw nothing humorous in this point of view.

755. **nō ... meahte**, *none the sooner could he away*. The omission of a verb of motion after the auxiliaries **magan**, **mōtan**, **sculan**, and **willan** is very frequent. Cf. Beowulf's last utterance, p. 147, l. 17.

768. The lines that immediately follow constitute a fine bit of description by indication of effects. The two contestants are withdrawn from our sight; but we hear the sound of the fray crashing through the massive old hall, which trembles as in a blast; we see the terror depicted on the faces of the



Danes as they listen to the strange sounds that issue from their former banqueting hall; by these sounds we, too, measure the progress and alternations of the combat. At last we hear only the “terror-lay” of Grendel, “lay of the beaten,” and know that Beowulf has made good his promise at the banquet (**gilp gelæsted**).

**769. cēnra gehwylcum.** The indefinite pronouns (§ 77) may be used as adjectives, agreeing in case with their nouns; but they frequently, as here, take a partitive genitive: **ānra gehwylcum**, *to each one (= to each of ones)*; **æ̅nige** (instrumental) **þinga**, *for any thing (= for any of things)*; **on healfa gehwone**, *into halves (= into each of halves)*; **ealra dōgra gehwām**, *every day (= on each of all days)*; **ūhtna gehwylce**, *every morning (= on each of mornings)*.

**780.** Notice that **hit**, the object of **tōbreca**n, stands for **wīn-sele**, which is masculine. See p. 39, Note 2. **Manna** is genitive after **gemete**, not after **æ̅nig**.

**787-89. gryre-lēoð ... hæfton [= hæftan].** Note that verbs of hearing and seeing, as in Mn.E., may be followed by the infinitive. They heard *God’s adversary sing (galan) ... hell’s captive bewail (wānigean)*. Had the present participle been used, the effect would have been, as in Mn.E., to emphasize the agent (the subject of the infinitive) rather than the action (the infinitive itself).

**795-96. þæ̅r ... lāfe.** Beowulf’s followers now seem to have seized their swords and come to his aid, not knowing that Grendel, having forsworn war-weapons himself, is proof against the best of swords. *Then many an earl of Beowulf’s (= an earl of B. very often) brandished his sword.* That no definite earl is meant is shown by the succeeding **hīe meah-ton** instead of **hē meah-te**. See p. 110, Note.

**799.** *They did not know this (ðæt), while they were fighting;* but the first **Hīe** refers to the warriors who proffered help; the second **hīe**, to the combatants, Beowulf and Grendel. In

apposition with **ðæt**, stands the whole clause, **þone synscaðan** (object of **grētan**) ... **nolde**. The second, or conjunctive, **ðæt** is here omitted before **þone**. See p. 112, note on ll. 18-19.

837. **grāpe** = genitive singular, feminine, after **eal**.

1 = ealdor-.

2 = Heorote.

3 = hæftan.

4 = ealdor-.

5 = weorðan.

6 = mōdiga.

7 = āglæca.

8 = -hliðu.

9 = ealdres.

#### BEOWULF FATALLY WOUNDED. [Lines 2712-2752.]

[Hrothgar, in his gratitude for the great victory, lavishes gifts upon Beowulf; but Grendel's mother must be reckoned with. Beowulf finds her at the sea-bottom, and after a desperate struggle slays her. Hrothgar again pours treasures into Beowulf's lap. Beowulf, having now accomplished his mission, returns to Sweden. After a reign of fifty years, he goes forth to meet a fire-spewing dragon that is ravaging his kingdom. In the struggle Beowulf is fatally wounded. Wiglaf, a loyal thane, is with him.]

Ðā sīo <sup>1</sup> wund ongōn,  
þe him se eorð-draca ær geworhte,  
swēlan ond swellan. Hē þæt sōna onfand,  
[2715] þæt him on brēostum bealo-nīð wēoll  
āttor on innan. Ðā se æðeling gīong, <sup>2</sup>  
þæt hē bī wealle, wīs-hycgende,  
gesæt on sesse; seah on ęnta geweorc,  
hū þā stān-bogan stapulum fæste  
[2720] ēce eorð-ęced innan healde.  
Hyne þā mid handa heoro-drēorigne,  
þēoden mæerne, þegn ungemete till,  
wine-dryhten his wætere gelafede,

hilde-sædne,    ƿnd his helm onspēon.  
 [2725] Bīowulf<sup>3</sup> maðelode;    hē ofer bēnne spræc,  
 wunde wæl-blēate;    wisse hē gearwe,  
 þæt hē dæg-hwīla    gedrogen hæfde  
 eorðan wynne;    þā wæs eall sceacen  
 dōgor-gerīmes,    dēað ungemete nēah:  
 [2730] “Nū ic suna mīnum    syllan wolde  
 gūð-gewǣdu,    þær mē gifeðe swā  
 ǣnig yrfe-weard    æfter wurde  
 līce gelenge.    Ic ðās lēode hēold  
 fīftig wintra;    næs se folc-cyning  
 [2735] ymbe-sittendra    ænig þāra,  
 þe mec gūð-winum    grētan dorste,  
 egesan ðēon.    Ic on earde bād  
 mǣl-gesceafta,    hēold mīn tela,  
 nē sōhte searo-nīðas,    nē mē swōr fela  
 [2740] āða on unriht.    Ic ðæs ealles mæg,  
 feorh-bēnnum sēoc,    gefēan habban;  
 for-þām mē wītan ne ðearf    Waldend<sup>4</sup> fīra  
 morðor-bealo<sup>5</sup> māga,    þonne mīn sceaceð  
 līf of līce.    Nū ðū lungre geong<sup>6</sup>  
 [2745] hord scēawian    under hārne stān,  
 Wīglāf lēofa,    nū se wyrm ligeð,  
 swefeð sāre wund,    since berēafod.  
 Bīo<sup>7</sup> nū on ofoste,    þæt ic ǣr-welan,  
 gold-ǣht ongite,    gearo scēawige  
 [2750] swegle searo-gimmas,    þæt ic ðȳ sēft mæge  
 æfter māððum-welan    mīn ālætan  
līf ƿnd lēod-scipe,    þone ic lōnge hēold.”

2716. **se æðeling** is Beowulf.

2718. **ęnta geweorc** is a stereotyped phrase for anything that occasions wonder by its size or strangeness.

2720. **healde**. Heyne, following Ettmüller, reads **hēoldon**,

thus arbitrarily changing mood, tense, and number of the original. Either mood, indicative or subjunctive, would be legitimate. As to the tense, the narrator is identifying himself in time with the hero, whose wonder was “how the stone-arches ... *sustain* the ever-during earth-hall”: the construction is a form of *oratio recta*, a sort of *miratio recta*. The singular **healde**, instead of **healden**, has many parallels in the dependent clauses of *Beowulf*, most of these being relative clauses introduced by **þāra þe** (= *of those that ...* + a singular predicate). In the present instance, the predicate has doubtless been influenced by the proximity of **eorð-reced**, a *quasi*-subject; and we have no more right to alter to **healden** or **hēoldon** than we have to change Shakespeare’s *gives* to *give* in

“Words to the heat of deeds too cold breath *gives*.”

(*Macbeth*, II, I, 61.)

2722. The **þegn ungemete till** is Wiglaf, the bravest of Beowulf’s retainers.

2725. **hē ofer þenne spræc**. The editors and translators of *Beowulf* invariably render **ofer** in this passage by *about*; but Beowulf says not a word about his wound. The context seems to me to show plainly that **ofer** (cf. Latin *supra*) denotes here opposition = *in spite of*. We read in *Genesis*, l. 594, that Eve took the forbidden fruit **ofer Drihtenes word**. Beowulf fears (l. 2331) that he may have ruled unjustly = **ofer ealde riht**; and he goes forth (l. 2409) **ofer willan** to confront the dragon.

2731-33. **þær mē ... gelenge**, *if so be that (þær ... swā) any heir had afterwards been given me (mē gifeðe ... æfter wurde) belonging to my body*.

2744-45. **geong [= gŏng] ... scēawian**. See note on **ēode ... sittan**, p. 137, ll. 19-20. In Mn.E. *Go see, Go fetch*, etc., is the second verb imperative (coördinate with the first), or

subjunctive (*that you may see*), or infinitive without *to*?

2751-52. **mīn ... lif**. See note on **ęnde-dæg ... mīnne**, p. 137, ll. 16-17.

- 1 = sēo.
- 2 = gēong.
- 3 = Bēowulf.
- 4 = Wealdend.
- 5 = morđor-bealu.
- 6 = gŦng (gang).
- 7 = Bēo.

### BEOWULF'S LAST WORDS. [Lines 2793-2821.]

[Wiglaf brings the jewels, the tokens of Beowulf's triumph. Beowulf, rejoicing to see them, reviews his career, and gives advice and final directions to Wiglaf.]

*Bīowulf*<sup>1</sup> mađelode,  
gŦmel on gιοhđe (gold scēawode):  
[2795] “Ic þāra frætwa Frēan ealles đanc,  
Wuldur-cyninge, wordum sęcge  
ęcum Dryhtne, þe ic hēr on starie,  
þæs þe ic mōste mīnum lēodum  
āer swylt-dæge swylc gestrȳnan.  
[2800] Nū ic on māđma hord mīne bebohte  
frōde feorh-lege, fremmađ gē nū  
lēoda þearfe; ne mæg ic hēr leng wesan.  
Hātađ heađo-māere hlāew gewyrcean,  
beorhtne æfter bāele æt brimes nosan;  
[2805] sē scel<sup>2</sup> tō gemyndum mīnum lēodum  
hēah hlīfian on HrŦnes næsse,  
þæt hit sē-līđend syđđan hātan<sup>3</sup>  
Bīowulfes<sup>1</sup> biorh<sup>1</sup> þā þe brentingas  
ofer flōda genipu feorran drīfađ.”  
[2810] Dyde him of healse hring gyldenre  
þīoden<sup>1</sup> þrīst-hȳdig; þegne gesealde,

geongum gār-wigan, gold-fāhne helm,  
 bēah ƿnd byrnan, hēt hyne brūcan well.  
 “ƿū eart ęnde-lāf ūsses cynnes,  
 [2815] Wægmundinga; ealle wyrd forswēop  
 mīne māgas tō metod-scafte,  
 eorlas on ęlne; ic him æfter sceal.”  
 Ɖæt wæs Ɖām gƿmelan gingeste word  
 brēost-gehygdum, ær hē bāel cure,  
 [2820] hāte heaðo-wylmas; him of hreðre gewāt  
 sāwol sēcean sōð-fæstra dōm.

2795-99. The expression **secgan Ɖanc** takes the same construction as **Ɖancian**; i.e., the dative of the person (**Frēan**) and the genitive (a genitive of cause) of the thing (**Ɖāra frætwa**). Cf. note on **biddan**, p. 45. The antecedent of **Ɖe** is **frætwa**. For the position of **on**, see § 94, (5). The clause introduced by **Ɖæs Ɖe** (*because*) is parallel in construction with **frætwa**, both being causal modifiers of **secgan Ɖanc**. The Christian coloring in these lines betrays the influence of priestly transcribers.

2800. *Now that I, in exchange for (on) a hoard of treasures, have bartered (bebohte) the laying down (-lege > licgan) of my old life.* The ethical codes of the early Germanic races make frequent mention of blood-payments, or life-barters. There seems to be here a suggestion of the “*wergild*.”

2801. **fręmmað gē**. The plural imperative (as also in **Hātað**) shows that Beowulf is here speaking not so much to Wiglaf in particular as, through Wiglaf, to his retainers in general,—to his *comitatus*.

2806. The desire for conspicuous burial places finds frequent expression in early literatures. The tomb of Achilles was situated “high on a jutting headland over wide Hellespont that it might be seen from off the sea.” Elpenor asks Ulysses to bury him in the same way. Æneas places the ashes of

Misenus beneath a high mound on a headland of the sea.

2807. **hit** = **hlǣw**, which is masculine. See [p. 39, Note 2](#).

2810-11. **him ... þīoden**. The reference in both cases is to Beowulf, who is disarming himself (**do-of** > *doff*) for the last time; **þegne** = *to Wiglaf*.

Note, where the personal element is strong, the use of the dative instead of the more colorless possessive; **him of healse**, not **of his healse**.

2817. **ic ... sceal**. See note on **nō ... meahte**, [p. 140, l. 1](#).

2820. **him of hreðre**. Cf. note on **him ... þīoden**, [p. 147, ll. 10-11](#).

2820-21. For construction of **gewāt ... sēcean**, see note on **ēode ... sittan**, [p. 137, ll. 19-20](#).

1 = *īo*, *io* = *ēo*, *eo*.

2 = *sceal*.

3 = *hāten*.

## VII. THE WANDERER.

[Exeter MS. “The epic character of the ancient lyric appears especially in this: that the song is less the utterance of a momentary feeling than the portrayal of a lasting state, perhaps the reflection of an entire life, generally that of one isolated, or bereft by death or exile of protectors and friends.” (Ten Brink, *Early Eng. Lit.*, I.) I adopt Brooke’s threefold division (*Early Eng. Lit.*, p. 356): “It opens with a Christian prologue, and closes with a Christian epilogue, but the whole body of the poem was written, it seems to me, by a person who thought more of the goddess Wyrð than of God, whose life and way of thinking were uninfluenced by any distinctive Christian doctrine.”

The author is unknown.]

### PROLOGUE.

Oft him ānhaga    āre gebīdeð,  
Metudes <sup>1</sup> miltse,    þēah þe hē mōdcearig  
geond lagulāde    lōnge sceolde

hrēran mid hōndum hrīmcealde sǣ,  
[5] wadan wræclǣstas: wyrd bið ful ārǣd!  
Swā cwæð eardstapa earfeþa <sup>2</sup> gemyndig,  
wrāþra wælsleahta, winemǣga hryres:

PLAINT OF THE WANDERER.

“Oft ic sceolde āna ūhtna gehwylce  
mīne ceare cwīþan; nis nū cwicra nān,  
[10] þe ic him mōdsefan mīnne durre  
sweotule <sup>3</sup> āsecgan. Ic tō sōþe wāt  
þæt biþ in eorle indryhten þēaw,  
þæt hē his ferðlocan fæste binde,  
healde his hordcofan, hycge swā hē wille;  
[15] ne mæg wērig mōd wyrde wiðstōndan  
nē sē hrēo hyge helpe gefrēman:  
for ðon dōmgeorne drēorigne oft  
in hyra brēostcofan bindað fæste.  
Swā ic mōdsefan mīnne sceolde  
[20] oft earmcearig ēðle bidǣled,  
frēomǣgum feor feterum sǣlan,  
siþþan gēara iū goldwine mīnne  
hrūsan heolster biwrāh, and ic hēan þōnan  
wōd wintercearig ofer waþema gebind,  
[25] sōhte seþle drēorig sinces bryttan,  
hwǣr ic feor oþþe nēah findan meahthe  
þone þe in meoduhealle <sup>4</sup> miltse wisse  
oþþe mec frēondlēasne frēfran wolde,  
wēnian mid wynnnum. Wāt sē þe cunnað  
[30] hū slīþen bið sorg tō gefēran  
þām þe him lýt hafað lēofra geholena:  
warað hine wræclāst, nāles wunden gold,  
ferðloca frēorig, nālæs foldan blǣd;  
gemōn hē selesęcgas and sincþege,



[35] hū hine on geoguðe his goldwine  
 wenede tō wiste: wyn eal gedrēas!  
 For þon wāt sē þe sceal his winedryhtnes  
 lēofes lārcwidum lōnge forþolian,  
 ðonne sorg and slǣp sōmod ætgædre  
 [40] earmne ānhagan oft gebindað:  
 þinceð him on mōde þæt hē his mōndryhten  
 clyppe and cysse, and on cnēo lęcge  
 hōnda and hēafod, swā hē hwīlum ær  
 in gēardagum giefstōles brēac;  
 [45] ðonne onwæcneð eft winelēas guma,  
 gesihð him biforan fealwe wægās,  
 baþian brimfuglas, brædan feþra,  
 hrēosan hrīm and snāw hagle gemęnged.  
 Donne bēoð þȳ hefigran heortan þenne,  
 [50] säre æfter swæsne; sorg bið genīwad;  
 þonne māga gemynd mōd geondhweorfeð,  
 grēteð gliwstafum, georne geondscēawað.  
 Sęcga geseldan swimmað eft on weg;  
 flēotendra ferð <sup>5</sup> nō þær fela bringeð  
 [55] cūðra cwidegiedda; cearo <sup>6</sup> bið genīwad  
 þām þe sęndan sceal swīþe geneahhe  
 ofer waþema gebind wērigne sefan.  
 For þon ic geþencan ne mæg geond þās woruld  
 for hwan mōdsefa mīn ne gesweorce,  
 [60] þonne ic eorla lif eal geondþence,  
 hū hī færlīce flęt ofgēafon,  
 mōdge maguþegnas. Swā þēs middangeard  
 ealra dōgra gehwām drēoseð and fealleþ;  
 for þon ne mæg weorþan wīs wer, ær hē āge  
 [65] wintra dæ̅l in woruldrīce. Wita sceal gepyldig,  
 ne sceal nō tō hātheort nē tō hrædwyrde,  
 nē tō wāc wiga nē tō wanhȳdig,  
 nē tō forht nē tō fægen nē tō feohgīfre,

nē nǣfre gielpes tō georn,    ær hē geare cunne.  
[70] Beorn sceal gebīdan,    þonne hē bēot spriced,
oþ þæt collenferð    cunne gearwe
hwider hreþra gehygd    hweorfan wille.
Ongietan sceal glēaw hæle    hū gǣstlic bið,
þonne eall þisse worulde wela    wēste stōndeð,
[75] swā nū missenlice    geond þisne middangeard
winde biwāune <sup>7</sup>    weallas stōndaþ,
hrīme bihrorene, <sup>8</sup>    hryðge þā ederas.
Wōriað þā wīnsalo, <sup>9</sup>    waldend licgað
drēame bidrorene <sup>10</sup>;    duguð eal gecrōng
[80] wlōnc bī wealle:    sume wīg fornōm,
fereþe in forðwege;    sumne fugel <sup>11</sup> oþbær
ofer hēanne holm;    sumne sē hāra wulf
dēaðe gedǣlde;    sumne drēorighlēor
in eorðscræfe    eorl gehyðde:
[85] yþde swā þisne eardgeard    ælda Scyppend,
oþ þæt burgwara    breahtra lēase
eald ęnta geweorc    īdlu stōdon.
Sē þonne þisne wealsteal    wīse gepōhte,
and þis deorce līf    dēope geondþenceð,
[90] frōd in ferðe <sup>12</sup>    feor oft gemōn
wælsleahta worn,    and þās word ācwið:
‘Hwær cwōm mearg? hwær cwōm mago <sup>13</sup>? hwær cwōm
                 māþpumgyfa?
hwær cwōm symbla gesetu?    hwær sindon seledrēamas?
Ēalā beorht bune!    ēalā byrnwiga!
[95] ēalā þēodnes þrym!    hū sēo þrāg gewāt,
genāþ under nihthelm,    swā hēo nō wære!
Stōndeð nū on lāste    lēofre duguþe
weal wundrum hēah,    wyrmlīcum fāh:
eorlas fornōmon    asca þryþe,
[100] wæpen wælgīfru,    wyrd sēo mære;
and þās stānhleoþu <sup>14</sup>    stormas cnyssað;

hrīð hrēosende hrūsan bindeð,  
 wintres wōma, þonne wƿn cymeð,  
 nīpeð nihtscūa, norþan onsendeð  
 [105] hrēo hæglfare hæleþum on andan.  
 Eall is earfoðlic eorþan rīce,  
 onwendeð wyrda gesceaft weoruld under heofonum:  
 hēr bið feoh lāene, hēr bið frēond lāene,  
 hēr bið mƿn lāene, hēr bið mæg lāene;  
 [110] eal þis eorþan gesteal īdel weorþeð!”

#### EPILOGUE.

Swā cwæð snottor on mōde, gesæt him sundor æt rune.  
 Til biþ sē þe his trēowe gehealdeð; ne sceal nāefre his torn tō rycene  
 beorn of his brēostum ācýþan, nemþe hē ær þā bōte cunne;  
eorl mid ęlne gefremman. Wel bið þām þe him āre sēceð,  
 [115] frōfre tō Fæder on heofonum, þær ūs eal sēo fæstnung stƿndeð.

7. The MS. reading is **hryre** (nominative), which is meaningless.

8. For **ūhtna gehwylce**, see note on **cēnra gehwylcum**, p. 140.

10. **þe ... him**. See § 75 (4). Cf. *Merchant of Venice*, II, v, 50-51.

27. For **mine** (MS. **in**), which does not satisfy metrical requirements, I adopt Kluge’s plausible substitution of **miltse**; **miltse witan** = *to show (know, feel), pity*. The **myne wisse** of *Beowulf* (l. 169) is metrically admissible.

37. The object of **wāt** is **þinceð him on mōde**; but the construction is unusual, inasmuch as both **þæt’s** (**þæt** pronominal before **wāt** and **þæt** conjunctive before **þinceð**) are omitted. See p. 112, ll. 18-19.

41. **þinceð him on mōde** (see note on **him ... þīoden**, p. 147). “No more sympathetic picture has been drawn by an

Anglo-Saxon poet than where the wanderer in exile falls asleep at his oar and dreams again of his dead lord and the old hall and revelry and joy and gifts,—then wakes to look once more upon the waste of ocean, snow and hail falling all around him, and sea-birds dipping in the spray.” (Gummere, *Germanic Origins*, p. 221.)

**53-55. Sęcga ... cwidegiedda** = *But these comrades of warriors [= those seen in vision] again swim away [= fade away]; the ghost of these fleeting ones brings not there many familiar words; i.e. he sees in dream and vision the old familiar faces, but no voice is heard: they bring neither greetings to him nor tidings of themselves.*

**65. Wita sceal geþyldig.** Either **bēon (wesan)** is here to be understood after **sceal**, or **sceal** alone means *ought to be*. Neither construction is to be found in Alfredian prose, though the omission of a verb of motion after **sculan** is common in all periods of Old English. See note on **nō ... meahte**, p. 140.

**75. swā nū.** “The Old English lyrical feeling,” says Ten Brink, citing the lines that immediately follow **swā nū**, “is fond of the image of physical destruction”; but I do not think these lines have a merely figurative import. The reference is to a period of real devastation, antedating the Danish incursions. “We might fairly find such a time in that parenthesis of bad government and of national tumult which filled the years between the death of Aldfrith in 705 and the renewed peace of Northumbria under Ceolwulf in the years that followed 729.” (Brooke, *Early Eng. Lit.*, p. 355.)

**93. cwōm ... gesetu.** Ettmüller reads **cwōmon**; but see p. 107, note on **wæs ... þā īgland**. The occurrence of **hwær cwōm** three times in the preceding line tends also to hold **cwōm** in the singular when its plural subject follows. Note the influence of a somewhat similar structural parallelism in *seas hides* of these lines (*Winter’s Tale*, IV, iv, 500-502):

“Not for ... all the *sun sees* or  
The close *earth wombs* or the profound *seas hides*  
In unknown fathoms, will I break my oath.”

111. **gesæt ... rūne**, *sat apart to himself in silent meditation.*

114. **eorl ... gefrēman**. Supply **sceal** after **eorl**.

- 1 = Metodes.
- 2 = earfoþa.
- 3 = sweotole.
- 4 = medu-.
- 5 = ferhǫ.
- 6 = cearu.
- 7 = See bewāwan.
- 8 = See behrēosan.
- 9 = wīnsalu.
- 10 = See bedrēosan.
- 11 = fugol.
- 12 = ferhǫe.
- 13 = magu.
- 14 = -hliðu.

## I. GLOSSARY.



### OLD ENGLISH—MODERN ENGLISH.

[The order of words is strictly alphabetical, except that **ð** follows **t**. The combination **æ** follows **ad**.

Gender is indicated by the abbreviations, m. (= masculine), f. (= feminine), n. (= neuter). The usual abbreviations are employed for the cases, nom., gen., dat., acc., and instr. Other abbreviations are sing. (= singular), pl. (= plural), ind. (= indicative mood), sub. (= subjunctive mood), pres. (= present tense), pret. (= preterit tense), prep. (= preposition), adj. (= adjective), adv. (= adverb), part. (= participle), conj. (= conjunction), pron. (= pronoun), intrans. (= intransitive), trans. (= transitive).

Figures not preceded by § refer to page and line of the texts.

---

A B C D E F G H I K L  
M N O P R S T Đ U W Y

## A.

**ā**, *ever, always, aye.*

**abbudisse**, f., *abbess* [Lat. *abbatissa*].

**ābēodan** (§ 109), *bid, offer*;

**him hāel ābēad 138, 9** = *bade him hail, wished him health.*

**ābreca**n (§ 120, Note 2), *break down, destroy.*

**ābūgan** (§ 109, Note 1), *give way, start* [bow away].

**ac**, conj., *but.*

**ācweðan** (§ 115), *say, speak.*

**ācȳðan** (§ 126), *reveal, proclaim* [cūð].

**ād**, m., *funeral pile.*

**adesa**, m., *adze, hatchet.*

**ǣ** (ǣw), f., *law.*

**ǣdre** (ēdre), f., *stream, canal, vein*;

**blōd ēdrum dranc 139, 4** = *drank blood in streams* (instr.).

**ǣfæstnis**, f., *piety.*

**ǣfen-ræst**, f., *evening rest.*

**ǣfen-spræc**, f., *evening speech.*

**ǣfęst** (ǣwęst), *law-abiding, pious.*

**ǣfęstnis**, see **ǣfæstnis**.

**ǣfre**, *ever, always.*

**ǣfter**, prep. (§ 94, (1)), *after*;

**ǣfter ðǣm**, *after that, thereafter*;

**ǣfter ðǣm ðe**, conj., *after.*

**ǣfter**, adv., *after, afterwards.*

**ǣghwā** (§ 77, Note), *each, every.*

**ǣghwilc** (§ 77, Note), *each, any.*

**ǣglǣca**, see **āglǣca**.

**ǣgðer** (ǣghwæðer, āðer) (§ 77, Note), *each, either*;

**ǣgðer ... oðer ... oðer**, *either ... or ... or*;

**ǣgðer ge ... ge** (§ 95, (2)), *both ... and*;

**ǣgðer ge ... ge ... ge**, *both ... and ... and.*

**ǣht**, f., *property, possession* [**āgan**].

**ǣlc** (§ 77), *each*.

**ǣlde** (**ielde**) (§ 47), m. pl., *men*; gen. pl., **ǣlda**.

**ǣlmihtig**, *almighty*.

**ǣmetta**, m., *leisure* [*empti-ness*].

**ǣnig** (§ 77), *any*;

**ǣnige ðinga** 141, 22 = *for anything*.

(See 140, 15, Note.)

**ǣr**, adv., *before, formerly, sooner*;

**nō þȳ ǣr** 140, 1 = *none the sooner*;

**ǣror**, comparative, *before, formerly*;

**ǣrest**, superlative, *first*.

**ǣr**, conj. (§ 105, 2), *ere, before* = **ǣr ðǣm ðe**.

**ǣr**, prep, with dat., *before* (time);

**ǣr ðǣm ðe**, conj. (§ 105, 2), *before*.

**ærcebisceop**, m., *archbishop* [Lat. *archiepiscopus*].

**ǣrendgewrit**, n., *message, letter*.

**ǣrendwreca** (-raca), m., *messenger*.

**ǣrest**, adj. (§ 96, (4)), *first*.

**ærnan** (§ 127), *ride, gallop* [**iernan**].

**ǣrra**, adj. (§ 96, (4)), *former*.

**ǣrwela**, m., *ancient wealth*.

**æsc**, m., *ash, spear*; gen. pl., **asca**.

**Æscesdūn**, f., *Ashdown* (in Berkshire).

**æstel**, m., *book-mark* [Lat. *hastula*].

**æt** (§ 94, (1)), *at, in*;

with **leornian**, *to learn*, **geðicgan**, *to receive*, and other verbs of similar import,

**æt** = *from*: 115, 18; 137, 8, etc.

**ætberan** (§ 114), *bear to, hand*.

**ætgæd(e)re**, adv., *together*.

**ætsteppan** (§ 116), *step up, advance*; pret. sing., **ætstōp**.

**æðele**, *noble, excellent*.



**æðeling**, m., *a noble, prince*.  
**Æðelwulfing**, m., *son of Ethelwulf*.  
**Æðered**, m., *Ethelred*.  
**āfeallan** (§ 117), *fall*.  
**āfierran** (§ 127), *remove* [**feor**].  
**āgan** (§ 136), *to own, possess*.  
**āgen**, adj.-part., *own*; dat. sing., **āgnum** [**āgan**].  
**āgiefan** (§ 115), *give back*.  
**āglāeca** (**āeglāeca**), m., *monster, champion*.  
**āhton**, see **āgan**.  
**ālætan** (§ 117), *let go, leave*.  
**aldor**, see **ealdor**.  
**ālęgan** (§ 125, Note), *lay down* [**licgan**]; past part., **ālęd**.  
**Āliesend**, m., *Redeemer* [**ālīesan** = *release, ransom*].  
**ālimpan** (§ 110), *befall, occur*.  
**ālȳfan** (§ 126), *entrust, permit*.  
**ambor**, m., *measure*; gen. pl., **ambra** (§ 27, (4)).  
**ambyre**, *favorable*.  
**ān** (§ 89), *one*;  
    **āna**, *alone, only*;  
    **ānra gehwylcum** 141, 15 = *to each one*.  
    (See 140, 15, Note.)  
**anda**, m., *zeal, injury, indignation*;  
    **hæleðum on andan** 153, 6 = *harmful to men*.  
**andēfn**, f., *proportion, amount*.  
**andgiet** (-git), n., *sense, meaning*.  
**andgitfullīce**, *intelligibly*;  
    **-gitfullīcost**, *superlative*.  
**andswaru**, f., *answer*.  
**andwyrðan** (§ 127), *to answer*; pret., **andwyrde**.  
**Angel**, n., *Anglen* (in Denmark); dat. sing., **Angle** (§ 27 (4)).  
**Angelcynn**, n., *English kin, English people, England*.  
**ānhaga** (-hoga), m., *a solitary, wanderer* [**ān** + **hogian**, *to meditate*].

**ānlīpig**, *single, individual*.  
**ānunga** (§ 93, (2)), *once for all* [ān].  
**apostol**, m., *apostle* [Gr. ἀπόστολος].  
**ār**, f., *honor, property, favor*;  
    **āre gebīdeð** 148, 3 = *waits for divine favor* (gen.).  
**āræd**, adj., *inexorable*.  
**ārædan** (§ 126), *read*.  
**āręcc(e)an** (§ 128), *translate, expound*.  
**ārfæstnis**, f., *virtue*.  
**ārīsan** (§ 102), *arise*.  
**asca**, see **aesc**.  
**āseęgan** (§ 132), *say, relate*.  
**āsettan** (§ 127), *set, place*.  
**āsingan** (§ 110), *sing*.  
**āspędan** (§ 127), *spend, expend*.  
**āstīgan** (§ 102), *ascend, arise*.  
**āstōndan** (§ 116), *stand up*.  
**ātēah**, see **ātēon**.  
**atelic**, *horrible, dire*.  
**ātēon** (§ 118), *draw, draw away, take* (as a journey).  
**atol**, *horrible, dire*.  
**āttor**, n., *poison*.  
**ātuge**, see **ātēon**.  
**āð**, m., *oath*.  
**āðer**, see **æęðer**.  
**āweęccan** (§ 128), *awake, arouse*; pret. sing., **āweahte**, **āweęhte**.  
**aweg**, *away*.  
**āwęndan** (§ 127), *turn, translate*.  
**āwrītan** (§ 102), *write, compose*.  
**āwyrčan** (§ 128), *work, do, perform*.

## B.

**Bāchsecg**, m., *Bagsac*.

**bæcbord**, n., *larboard, left side of a ship*.

**bǣl**, n., *funeral fire, funeral pile*.

**bān**, n., *bone*.

**bān-fāg**, *adorned with bones or antlers*.

**bān-loca**, m., *flesh [bone-locker]*.

**Basengas**, m. pl., *Basing* (in Hantsire).

**be** (bī) (§ 94, (1)), *by, about, concerning, near, along, according to*;

**be norðan þǣm wēstenne** (§ 94, (4)), *north of the waste (desert)*;

**be fullan**, *fully, perfectly*.

**bēag**, see **būgan**.

**bēag-hroden**, *ring-adorned*.

**bēah** (bēag), m., *ring, bracelet, collar [būgan]*.

**bealo-nīð**, m., *dire hatred, poison, venom*.

**bearn**, n., *child, son [bairn]*.

**bebēodan** (§ 109), *command, bid, entrust* (with dat.).

**bebīo-**, see **bebēo-**.

**bebohte**, see **bebycgan**.

**bebycgan** (§ 128), *sell*.

**bēc**, see **bōc**.

**becuman** (§ 114), *come, arrive, befall*.

**bedǣlan** (§ 126), *separate, deprive*.

**bedrēosan** (§ 109), *deprive*; past part. pl., **bedrorene** (**bidrorene**) [*dross, dreary*].

**befǣstan** (§ 127), *fasten, implant*.

**befēolan** (§ 110), *apply one's self*;

**ðāra ðe ðā spēda hæbben ðæt hīe ðǣm befēolan mægen** 119, 20 = *of those who have the means by which they may apply themselves to it*.

**beforan**, prep. with dat., *before*.

**bēgen** (declined like **twēgen**, § 89), *both*.

**begeondan** (**begiondan**), prep. with dat., *beyond*.

**begietan** (§ 115), *get, obtain, find*.

**beginnan** (§ 110), *begin*.

**beheonan** (**behionan**), prep. with dat., *on this side of*.  
**behreōsan** (§ 109), *fall upon, cover*; past part. pl., **behrorene** (**bihrorene**).  
**belimpan** (§ 110), *pertain, belong*.  
**beniman** (§ 114), *take, derive*.  
**beŋn**, f., *wound* [**bana** = *murderer*].  
**bēon** (**bīon**) (§ 134), *be, consist*.  
**beorh** (**beorg, biorh**), m., *mound* [*barrow*].  
**beorht**, *bright, glorious*.  
**Beormas**, m. pl., *Permians*.  
**beorn**, m., *man, hero, chief*.  
**bēor-þeġu**, f., *beer-drinking* [**þicgan** = *receive*].  
**bēot**, n., *boast*.  
**beran** (§ 114), *bear*.  
**berēafian** (§ 130), *bereave*;  
    since **berēafod** 145, 22 = *bereft of treasure*.  
**beren**, adj., *of a bear, bear*.  
**berstan** (§ 110), *burst, crack*.  
**besmiðian** (§ 130), *make hard* (as at the forge of a smith).  
**beṭ**, see **wel** (§ 97, (2)).  
**bētan** (§ 126), *make good, requite*; past part. pl., **gebētte**.  
**beṭera** (**beṭra**), see **gōd** (§ 96, (3)).  
**betlic**, *excellent*.  
**beṭsta**, see **gōd** (§ 96, (3)).  
**betuh** (**betux**) (§ 94, (1)), *between*.  
**betwēonan** (§ 94, (1)), *between*.  
**betȳnan** (§ 126), *close, end* [**tūn** = *enclosure*].  
**bewāwan** (§ 117), *blow upon*; past part. pl., **bewāune** (**biwāune, bewāwene**).  
**bewrēon** (§ 118, 1), *enwrap*; pret. 3d sing., **bewrāh** (**biwrāh**).  
**bī**, see **be**.  
**bi-**, see **be-**.  
**bīdan** (§ 102), *bide, await, expect, endure* (with gen.).  
**biddan** (§ 115, Note 2), *bid, pray, request* (§ 65, Note 3);

**bæd hine bliðne** 136, 7 = *bade him be blithe*.

**bindan** (§ 110), *bind*.

**bīo**, see **bēo** (imperative sing.).

**bisceop (biscep)**, m., *bishop* [Lat. episcopus].

**bisceop-stōl**, m., *episcopal seat, bishopric*.

**bisigu**, f., *business, occupation*; dat. pl., **bisgum**.

**bītan** (§ 102), *bite, cut*.

**biwrāh**, see **bewrēon**.

**blǣd**, m., *glory, prosperity* [**blāwan** = *blow, inflate*].

**Blēcinga-ēg**, f., *Blekingen*.

**bliss**, f., *bliss* [**blīðe**].

**blīðe**, *blithe, happy*.

**blōd**, n., *blood*.

**bōc** (§ 68, (1), Note 1), f., *book*.

**bōcere**, m., *scribe* [**bōc**].

**bōna (bana)**, m., *murderer* [*bane*].

**bōt**, f., *boot, remedy, help, compensation*.

**brād** (§ 96, (1)), *broad*.

**brǣdan** (§ 126), *extend, spread* [**brād**].

**brǣdra**, see **brād**.

**brægd**, see **bregdan**.

**brēac**, see **brūcan**.

**breahm**, m., *noise, revelry*;  
**burgwara breahmta lēase** 152, 10 = *bereft of the revelries of citizens*.

**bregdan** (§ 110), *brandish, draw* [*braid*]; pret. ind. 3d sing., **brægd**.

**brenting**, m., *high ship*.

**brēost**, n., *breast* (the pl. has the same meaning as the sing.).

**brēost-cofa**, m., *breast-chamber, heart, mind*.

**brēost-gehygd**, n., *breast-thought, thought of the heart, emotion*.

**brim**, n., *sea, ocean*.

**brimfugol**, m., *sea-fowl*.

**bringan** (§ 128), *bring*.

**brōhte, brōhton**, see **bringan**.

**brōðor (brōður)** (§ 68, (2)), m., *brother*.

**brūcan** (§ 109, Note 1), *use, enjoy* (§ 62, Note 1; but Alfred frequently employs the acc. with **brūcan**).

**brycg**, f., *bridge*.

**brȳcð**, see **brūcan**.

**brytta**, m., *distributor, dispenser* [**brēotan** = *break in pieces*].

**būan** (§ 126, Note 2),  *dwell, cultivate* [bower].

**būde**, see **būan**.

**bufan**, prep. with dat. and acc., *above*.

**būgan** (§ 109, Note 1), *bow, bend, turn*.

**bune**, f., *cup*.

**burg (burh)** (§ 68, (1), Note), f., *city, borough*; dat. sing., **byrig**.

**Burgenda**, m. gen. pl., *of the Burgundians*;

**Burgenda land**, *Bornholm*.

**burgware** (§ 47), m. pl., *burghers, citizens*.

**burh**, see **burg**.

**būtan (būton)**, prep. (§ 94, (1)), *without, except, except for, but*.

**būtan (būton)**, conj., *except that, unless*.

**būtū**, *both* (= *both—two*).

The word is compounded of the combined neuters of **bēgen** and **twēgen**, but is m. and f. as well as n.).

**bȳn** (§ 126, Note 2), *cultivated*.

**byrde**, adj., *of high rank, aristocratic*.

**byrig**, see **burg**.

**byrne**, f., *byrnie, corselet, coat of mail*.

**byrnwiga**, m., *byrnie-warrior, mailed soldier*.

**byrð**, see **beran**.

## C.

**canōn**, m., *sacred canon, Bible* [Lat. canon, Gr. κανών].

**cearu (cearo)**, f., *care*.

**ceaster-būend**, m., *castle-dweller*.

**cēne**, *keen, bold, brave*.

**cēosan** (§ 109), *choose, accept, encounter*.

**cild**, n., *child*.

**cirice**, f., *church*; nom. pl., **ciricean**.

**cirr** (**cierr**), m., *turn, time, occasion* [char, chore, ajar = on char, on the turn].

**cirran** (§ 127), *turn*.

**clāene**, *clean, pure*.

**clāene**, adv., *entirely* [“clean out of the way,” Shaks.].

**clūdig**, *rocky* [having boulders or masses like *clouds*].

**clyppan** (§ 127), *embrace, accept* [clip = clasp for letters, papers, etc.].

**cnapa**, m., *boy* [knave].

**cnēo** (**cnēow**), n., *knee*; acc. pl., **cnēo**.

**cniht**, m., *knight, warrior*.

**cnyssan** (§ 125), *beat*.

**collenferð** (-ferhð), *proud-minded, fierce*.

**costnung**, f., *temptation*.

**Crēcas** (**Crēacas**), m. pl., *Greeks*.

**cringan** (§ 110), *cringe, fall*.

**Crīst**, m., *Christ*.

**Crīsten**, *Christian*; nom. pl. m., **Crīstene**, **Crīstne**.

**cuma**, m., *new-comer, stranger*.

**cuman** (§ 114), *come*. (See p. 138, Note on ll. 2-6.)

**cunnan** (§ 137), *know, can, understand*.

**cunnian** (§ 130), *make trial of, experience* [**cunnan**].

**cure**, see **cēosan**.

**cūð**, *well-known, familiar* [past part. of **cunnan**: cf. uncouth].

**cūðe**, **cūðen**, **cūðon**, see **cunnan**.

**cwæden**, **cwædon**, see **cweðan**.

**cwalu**, f., *death, murder* [**cwelan**].

**cwealm-cuma**, m., *murderous comer*.

**cwelan** (§ 114), *die* [to quail].

**cwēn**, f., *queen*.

**Cwēnas**, m. pl., *a Finnish tribe*.

**cweðan** (§ 115), *say, speak* [quoth, bequeath].

**cwic**, *living, alive* [quicksilver; the quick and the dead].

**cwidegiedd**, n., *word, utterance* [**cweðan** and **gieddian**, both meaning *to speak*].

**cwīðan** (§ 126), *bewail* (trans.).

**cwōm**, see **cuman**.

**cyle** (**ciele**), m., *cold* [chill];

**cyle gewyrca** 110, 7 = *produce cold, freeze*.

**cyme**, m., *coming* [**cuman**].

**cyn(n)**, n., *kin, race*.

**cyn(n)**, adj. (used only in pl.), *fitting things, etiquette, proprieties, courtesies*;

**cynna gemyndig** 136, 3 = *mindful of courtesies*.

**cynerīce**, n., *kingdom*.

**cyning**, m., *king*.

**cyssan** (§ 125), *kiss*.

**cyst**, f., *the choice, the pick, the best* [**cēosan**].

**cȳðan** (§ 126), *make known, display*, [**cūð**];

2d sing. imperative, **cȳð**.

## D.

**dæd**, f., *deed*.

**dæg**, m., *day*.

**dæg-hwīl**, f., *day-while, day*;

**hē dæg-hwīla gedrogen hæfde eorðan wynne** 145, 2 = *he had spent his days of earth's joy*.

**dæg-rīm**, n., *number of days* [day-rime];

**dōgera daeg-rīm** 143, 7 = *the number of his days*.

**dæl**, n., *dale*.

**dǣl**, m., *part, deal, division*.

**dēad**, *dead*.

**dēað**, m., *death*.

**dēman** (§ 126), *deem, judge*.



**Denamearc**, see **Denemearc**.

**Dene** (§ 47), m. pl., *Danes*.

**Denemearc** (**Denemearce**), f., *Denmark*; dat. sing., **Denemearce** (strong),  
**Denemearcan** (weak).

**Denisc**, *Danish*;

**ǰā Deniscan**, *the Danes*.

**dēofol**, m., n., *devil*; gen. sing., **dēofles** (§ 27, (4)).

**dēope**, *deeply, profoundly* [**dēop**].

**dēor**, n., *wild animal* [deer].

**deorc**, *dark, gloomy*.

**dōgor**, n., *day*; gen. pl., **dōgora**, **dōgera**, **dōgra**.

**dōgor-gerīm**, n., *number of days, lifetime*.

**dōm**, m., *doom, judgment, glory*.

**dōmgeorn**, adj., *eager for glory* [*doom-yearning*].

**dōn** (§ 135), *do, cause, place, promote, remove*.

**dorste**, **dorston**, see **durran**.

**drēam**, m., *joy, mirth* [dream].

**drēogan** (§ 109), *endure, enjoy, spend* [Scotch dree].

**drēorig**, *dreary, sad*.

**drēorighlēor**, adj., *with sad face* [**hlēor** = *cheek, face, leer*].

**drēosan** (§ 109), *fall, perish* [dross].

**drīfan** (§ 102), *drive*.

**drihten**, see **dryhten**.

**drincan** (§ 110), *drink*.

**drohtoǰ** (-aǰ), m., *mode of living, occupation* [**drēogan**].

**drugon**, see **drēogan**.

**dryhten** (**drihten**), m., *lord, Lord*; dat. sing., **dryhtne**.

**dryht-sele**, m., *lordly hall*.

**duguǰ**, f., *warrior-band, host, retainers* [**doughtiness**].

In **duguǰ** and **geogoǰ**, the higher (older) and lower (younger) ranks are represented, the distinction corresponding roughly to the mediæval distinction between knights and squires.

**durran** (§ 137), *dare*.

**duru**, f., *door*.

**dyde**, see **dōn**.

**dynnan** (§ 125), **resound** [din].

**dȳre** (**dīere**, **dēore**, **dīore**), *dear, costly*.

## E.

**ēa**, f., *river*; gen. sing., **ēas**; dat. and acc. sing., **ēa**.

**ēac**, *also, likewise* [a nickname = an eek-name. See § 65, Note 2];

**ēac swilce** (**swelce**) 112, 3 = *also*.

**ēaca**, m., *addition* [**ēac**];

**tō ēacan** = *in addition to* (§ 94, (4)).

**ēage**, n., *eye*.

**eahta**, *eight*.

**ēalā**, *oh! alas!*

**ealað**, see **ealu**.

**eald** (§ 96, (2)), *old*.

**ealdor** (**aldor**), n., *life*;

**gif ðū ðæt ęllenweorc aldre gedīgest** 138, 17 = *if thou survivest that feat with thy life* (instr.).

**ealdor-dæg** (**aldor-**, **ealder-**), m., *day of life*.

**ealdor-gedāl** (**aldor-**), n., *death* [life-deal].

**ealdormōn**, m., *alderman, chief, magistrate*.

**ealgian**, (§ 130), *protect, defend*.

**eall** (**eal**), *all*;

**ealne weg**, *all the way* (§ 98, (1));

**ealneg** (< **ealne weg**), *always*;

**ealles** (§ 98, (3)), adv., *altogether, entirely*.

**Eall** (**eal**) is frequently used with partitive gen. = *all of*: 143, 19; 145, 3.

**ealu** (**ealo**) (§ 68), n., *ale*; gen. sing., **ealað**.

**ealu-scerwen**, f., *mortal panic* [ale-spilling].

**eard**, m., *country, home* [**eorðe**].

**eardgeard**, m. *earth* [earth-yard].

**eardian** (§ 130),  *dwell* [**eard**].

**eardstapa**, m., *wanderer* [earth-stepper].

**ēare**, n., *ear*.

**earfoð** (**earfeð**), n. *hardship, toil*; gen. pl., **earfeða**.

**earfoðlic**, adj., *full of hardship, arduous*.

**earm**, m., *arm*.

**earm**, adj., *poor, wretched*.

**earmcearig**, *wretched, miserable*.

**earmlīc**, *wretched, miserable*.

**earnung**, f., *merit* [earning].

**ēast**, *east*.

**ēastan** (§ 93, (5)), *from the east*.

**Ēast-Dene** (§ 47), *East-Danes*.

**ēasteward**, *eastward*.

**ēastrihte** (**ēastryhte**) (§ 93, (6)), *eastward*.

**Ēastron**, pl., *Easter*.

**ēaðe**, *easily*.

**ēaðmōdlīce**, *humbly*.

**eaxl**, f., *shoulder* [axle].

**Ebrēisc**, adj., *Hebrew*.

**ēce**, *eternal, everlasting*.

**ęcg**, f., *sword* [edge].

**edor**, m., *enclosure, dwelling*; nom. pl., **ederas**.

**ēdrum**, see **ǣdre**.

**efne**, adv., *just, only* [evenly].

**eft**, adv., *again, afterwards* [aft].

**ęgesa**, m., *fear, terror* [awe].

**ęllen**, n., *strength, courage*;

**mid ęlne** = *boldly*;

**on ęlne** 147, 17 = *mightily, suddenly, or in their (earls') strength (prime)*.

**ęllen-mǣrðu**, f. *fame for strength, feat of strength*.

**ęllen-weorc**, n., *feat of strength*.

**ęllenwōdnis**, f., *zeal, fervor*.

ęllor-gāst, m., *inhuman monster* [alien ghost].

ęln, f., *ell* [el-bow].

ęlne, *see ęllen.*

ęlra, adj. comparative, *another* [**\*ęle** cognate with Lat. *alius*];

**on ęlran męn** 139, 14 = *in another man.*

emnlong (-lang), *equally long*;

**on emnlange** = *along* (§ 94, (4)).

ęnde, m., *end.*

ęndebyrdnes, f., *order.*

ęnde-dæg, m., *end-day, day of death.*

ęnde-lāf, f., *last remnant* [end-leaving].

ęngel, m., *angel* [Lat. *angelus*].

Ęnglafeld (§ 51), m., *Englefield* (in Berkshire).

Ęngle (§ 47), m. pl., *Angles.*

Ęnglisc, adj., *English*;

**on Ęnglisc** 117, 18 and 19 = *in English, into English.*

Ęngliscgereord, n., *English language.*

ęnt, m., *giant.*

ēode, *see gān.*

eodorcan (§ 130), *ruminant.*

eorl, m., *earl, warrior, chieftain.*

eorlīc, *earl-like, noble.*

eorð-draca, m., **dragon** [earth-drake].

eorðe, f., *earth.*

eorð-řeced, n., *earth-hall.*

eorðscræf, n., *earth-cave, grave.*

eoten, m., *giant, monster.*

ēow, *see ðū.*

Ēowland, n., *Öland* (an island in the Baltic Sea).

ęrian (§ 125), *plow* [to ear].

Estland, n., *land of the Estas* (on the eastern coast of the Baltic Sea).

Estmęre, m., *Frische Haff.*

**Estum**, dat. pl., *the Estas*.

**etan** (§ 115), *eat* [**ort**].

**ettan** (§ 127), *graze* [**etan**].

**ēðel**, m., *territory, native land* [allodial].

**ēðel-weard**, m., *guardian of his country*.

## F.

**fæc**, n., *interval, space*.

**fæder** (§ 68, (2)), m., *father*.

**fægen**, *fain, glad, exultant*.

**fæger** (**fæger**), *fair, beautiful*.

**fælsian** (§ 130), *cleanse*.

**færlīce**, *suddenly* [**fæer** = *fear*].

**fæst**, *fast, held fast*.

**fæste**, adv., *fast, firmly*.

**fæstnung**, f., *security, safety*.

**fæt**, n., *vessel* [wine-fat, vat].

**fætels**, m., *vessel*; acc. pl., **fætels**.

**fæðm**, m., *embrace, bosom* [fathom = the space *embraced* by the extended arms].

**fāg** (**fāh**), *hostile*;

**hē wæs fāg wið God 142, 18** = *he was hostile to God*.

**fāh** (**fāg**), *variegated, ornamented*.

**Falster**, *Falster* (island in the Baltic Sea).

**fandian** (§ 130), *try, investigate* [**findan**].

**faran** (§ 116), *go* [fare].

**feallan** (§ 117), *fall, flow*.

**fealu**, *fallow, pale, dark*; nom. pl. m., **fealwe**.

**fēawe** (**fēa**, **fēawa**), pl., *few*.

**fela** (indeclinable), *much, many* (with gen.).

**feld** (§ 51), m., *field*.

**fell** (**fel**), n., *fell, skin, hide*.

**fēng**, see **fōn**.

**fęn-hlið**, n., *fen-slope*.

**fęn-hop**, n., *fen-retreat*.

**feoh**, n., *cattle, property* [fee]; gen. and dat. sing., **fēos**, **fēo**.

**feohgīfre**, *greedy of property, avaricious*.

**feohtan** (§ 110), *fight*.

**fēol**, see **feallan**.

**fēond** (§ 68, (3)), m., *enemy, fiend*.

**fēond-grāp**, f., *fiend-grip*.

**feor** (§ 96, (4)), adj., *far, far from* (with dat.).

**feor**, adv., *far, far back* (time).

**feorh**, m., n., *life*.

**feorh-bęnn**, f., *life-wound, mortal wound*.

**feorh-ļęgu**, f., *laying down of life*. (See p. 146, Note on l. 13.)

**feorh-sēoc**, *life-sick, mortally wounded*.

**feorm** (**fiorm**), f., *use, benefit (food, provisions)* [farm].

**feormian** (§ 130), *eat, devour*.

**feorran**, *from afar*.

**fēowertig**, *forty*; gen., **fēowertiges** (§ 91, Note 1).

**ferhð** (**ferð**), m., *heart, mind, spirit*.

**fęrian** (§ 125), *carry, transport* [to ferry];

**fęrede in forðwege** 152, 5 = *carried away*.

**fers**, n., *verse* [Lat. versus].

**fersc**, *fresh*.

**ferðloca** (**ferhð-**), m., *heart, mind, spirit* [heart-locker].

**fēt**, see **fōt**.

**fetor**, f., *fetter* [**fōt**]; instr. pl., **feterum**.

**feðer**, f., *feather*; acc. pl., **feðra**.

**fierd**, f., *English army* [**faran**].

**fīf**, *five*.

**fīfūene**, *fifteen*.

**fīftig**, *fifty*; gen. sing., **fīftiges** (§ 91, Note 1); dat. pl., **fīftegum** (§ 91, Note 3).

**findan** (§ 110), *find*.

**finger**, m., *finger*.

**Finnas**, m. pl., *Fins*.

**fiorm**, see **feorm**.

**fīras**, m. pl., *men* [**feorh**]; gen. pl., **fīra**; dat. pl., **fīrum**.

**firrest** (**fierrest**), see **feor** (§ 96, (4)).

**first**, m., *time, period*.

**fiscað** (**fiscnað**), m., *fishing*.

**fiscere**, m., *fisherman*.

**fiscnað**, see **fiscað**.

**flēon** (§ 118, II.), *flee*.

**flēotan** (§ 109), *float*.

**flēt**, n., *floor of the hall*.

**flōd**, m., *flood, wave*.

**folc**, n., *folk, people*.

**folc-cwēn**, f., *folk-queen*.

**folc-cyning**, m., *folk-king*.

**folcgefeht**, n., *folk-fight, battle, general engagement*.

**fold-bold**, n., *earth-building, hall*.

**folde**, f., *earth, land, country* [**feld**].

**folm**, f., *hand* [**fēlan** = *feel*].

**fōn** (§ 118), *seize, capture, take* [**fang**];

**tō rīce fōn** = *come to (ascend) the throne*.

**for** (§ 94, (1)), *for, on account of*;

**for ðǣm** (**ðe**), **for ðon** (**ðe**), *because*;

**for ðon**, **for ðȳ**, **for ðǣm** (**for-ðām**), *therefore*.

**fōr**, see **faran**.

**forbærnan** (§ 127), *burn thoroughly* [**for** is intensive, like Lat. *per*].

**forgiefan** (**-gifan**) (§ 115), *give, grant*.

**forhęrgan** (§ 130), *harry, lay waste*.

**forhogdnis**, f., *contempt*.

**forht**, *fearful, afraid*.

**forhwæga**, *about, at least.*

**forlætan** (§ 117), *abandon, leave.*

**forlēt, forlēton**, see **forlætan**.

**forma**, *first;*

**forman sīðe**, *the first time (instr.).*

**forniman** (§ 114), *take off, destroy.*

**forspendan** (§ 127), *spend, squander.*

**forstōndan** (-standan) (§ 116), *understand.*

**forswāpan** (§ 117), *sweep away; pret. 3d sing. indic., forswēop.*



**forswērian** (§ 116), *for swear* (with dat.); past part., **forsworen**.

**forð**, *forth, forward*.

**forðolian** (§ 130), *miss, go without* (with dat.) [not to *thole* or experience].

**forðweg**, m., *way forth*;

**in forðwege**, *away*.

**fōt** (§ 68, (1)), m. *foot*.

**Fræna**, m., *Frene*.

**frætwe**, f. pl., *fretted armor, jewels* [fret].

**fram**, see **frōm**.

**frēa**, m., *lord, Lord*.

**frēa-drihten**, m., *lord, master*.

**frēfran** (§ 130), *console, cheer* [**frōfor**].

**frēnde**, *strange, foreign*;

**ðā frēndan**, *the strangers*.

**frēnman** (§ 125), *accomplish, perform, support* [to frame].

**frēmsunnes** (-nis), f., *kindness, benefit*.

**frēo** (**frīo**), *free*; gen. pl., **frēora** (**frīora**).

**frēodōm**, m., *freedom*.

**frēolīc**, *noble* [free-like].

**frēomæg**, m., *free kinsman*.

**frēond** (§ 68, (3)), m., *friend*.

**frēondlēas**, *friendless*.

**frēondlice**, *in a friendly manner*.

**frēorig**, *cold, chill* [**frēoran**].

**frīora**, see **frēo**.

**frīð**, m., n., *peace, security* [bel-fry].

**frōd**, *old, sage, prudent*.

**frōfor**, f., *comfort, consolation, alleviation*;

**fyrena frōfre** 137, 7 = *as an alleviation of outrages* (dat.).

**frōm** (**fram**) (§ 94, (1)), *from, by*.

**frōm**, adv., *away, forth*.

**fruma**, m., *origin, beginning* [**frōm**].

**frumsceaft**, f., *creation*.

**fugela**, see **fugol**.

**fugelere**, m., *fowler*.

**fugol (fugel)**, m., *fowl, bird*; gen. pl., **fugela**.

**ful**, n., *cup, beaker*.

**fūl**, *foul*.

**fūlian** (§ 130), *grow foul, decompose*.

**full (ful)**, adj., *full (with gen.)*;

**be fullan**, *fully, perfectly*.

**full (ful)** adv., *fully, very*.

**fultum**, m., *help*.

**furðor (furður)**, adv., *further*.

**furðum**, adv., *even*.

**fylð**, see **feallan**.

**fyren (firen)**, f., *crime, violence, outrage*.

**fyrhtu**, f., *fright, terror*; dat. sing., **fyrhtu**.

**fyrst**, adj., *superlative, first, chief*.

**fȳsan** (§ 126), *make ready, prepare* [**fūs** = *ready*];

**gūðe gefȳsed** 137, 9 = *ready for battle*.

## G.

**gād**, n., *lack*.

**gāest**, see **gāst**.

**gafol**, n., *tax, tribute*.

**galan** (§ 116), *sing* [nightingale].

**gālnes**, f., *lust, impurity*.

**gān** (§ 134), *go*.

**gār**, m., *spear* [gore, gar-fish].

**gār-wiga**, m., *spear-warrior*.

**gāst (gāest)**, m., *spirit, ghost*.

**gāstlic (gāestlic)**, *ghastly, terrible*.

**ge**, *and*; see **ægðer**.

**gē**, *ye*; see **ðū**.

**geador**, *together*.

**geǣmetigian** (§ 130), *disengage from* (with acc. of person and gen. of thing) [empty].

**geærnan** (§ 127), *gain by running* [**iernan**].

**gēap**, *spacious*.

**gēar**, n., *year*; gen. pl., **gēara**, is used adverbially = *of yore, formerly*.

**gēardæg**, m., *day of yore*.

**geare** (**gearo**, **gearwe**), *readily, well, clearly* [yarely].

**Gēat**, m., *a Geat, the Geat* (i.e. Beowulf).

**Gēatas**, m. pl., *the Geats* (a people of South Sweden).

**Gēat-mecgas**, m. pl., *Geat men* (= the fourteen who accompanied Beowulf to Heorot).

**gebēorscipe**, m., *banquet, entertainment*.

**gebētan** (§ 126), *make amends for* [**bōt**].

**gebīdan** (§ 102), *wait, bide one's time* (intrans.); *endure, experience* (trans., with acc.).

**gebīnd**, n., *commingling*.

**gebīndan** (§ 110), *bind*.

**gebrēowan** (§ 109), *brew*.

**gebrowen**, see **gebrēowan**.

**gebūd**, **gebūn**, see **būan** (§ 126, Note 2).

**gebyrd**, n., *rank, social distinction*.

**gecēosan** (§ 109), *choose, decide*.

**gecnāwan** (§ 117), *know, understand*.

**gecoren**, see **gecēosan**.

**gecringan** (§ 110), *fall, die* [cringe].

**gedǣlan** (§ 126), *deal out, give*;

**dēaðe gedǣlde** 152, 7 = *apportioned to death* (dat.), or, *tore (?) in death* (instr.).

**gedafenian** (§ 130), *become, befit, suit* (impersonal, usually with dat., but with acc. 112, 10).

**gedīgan** (§ 126), *endure, survive*.

**gedōn** (§ 135), *do, cause, effect.*

**gedræg**, n., *company.*

**gedrēosan** (§ 109), *fall, fail.*

**gedriht** (**gedryht**), n., *band, troop.*

**gedrogen**, see **drēogan**.

**gedrync**, n., *drinking.*

**geęndian** (§ 130), *end, finish.*

**gefaran** (§ 116), *go, die.*

**gefēa**, m., *joy.*

**gefeah**, see **gefeohtan**.

**gefeh**, see **gefēon**.

**gefēng**, see **gefōn**.

**gefeoht**, n., *fight, battle.*

**gefeohtan** (§ 110), *fight.*

**gefēon** (§ 118, v.), *rejoice at* (with dat.); pret. 3d sing., **gefeah**, **gefeh**.

**gefēra**, m., *companion, comrade* [co-farer].

**geflīeman** (§ 126), *put to flight* [**flēon**].

**gefohten**, see **gefeohtan**.

**gefōn** (§ 118, vii.), *seize.*

**gefōr**, see **gefaran**.

**gefræge**, n., *hearsay, report;*

**mīne gefræge** (instr.) 141, 7 = *as I have heard say, according to my information.*

**gefręmman** (§ 125), *perform, accomplish, effect.*

**gefultumian** (§ 130), *help* [**fultum**].

**gefylce**, n., *troop, division* [**folc**]; dat. pl., **gefylcum**, **gefylcium**.

**gefyllan** (§ 127), *fill* (with gen.); past part. pl., f., **gefylda**.

**geglęngan** (§ 127), *adorn.*

**gehātland**, n., *promised land* [**gehātan** = *to promise*].

**gehealdan** (§ 117), *hold, maintain.*

**gehīeran** (**gehȳran**) (§ 126), *hear.*

**gehīersumnes**, f., *obedience.*

**gehola**, m., *protector* [**helan**].

**gehwā** (§ 77, Note), *each*;

**on healfa gehwone** 142, 7 (see Note 140, 15. Observe that the pron. *may*, as here, be masc. and the gen. fem.).

**gehwæðer** (§ 77, Note), *each, either, both*.

**gehwylc (gehwilc)** (§ 77, Note), *each* (with gen. pl. See Note 140, 15).

**gehwyrfan** (§ 127), *convert, change*.

**gehȳdan** (§ 126), *hide, conceal, consign*.

**gehygd**, f., n., *thought, purpose*.

**gehȳran**, see **gehīeran**.

**gehȳrnes**, f., *hearing*;

**eal ðā hē in gehȳrnesse geleornian meahte** 115, 14 = *all things that he could learn by hearing*.

**gelædan** (§ 126), *lead*.

**gelæred**, part.-adj., *learned*; superlative, **gelæredest**.

**gelafian** (§ 130), *lave*.

**gelenge**, *along of, belonging to* (with dat.).

**geleornian (-liornian)** (§ 130), *learn*.

**gelīce**, *likewise; in like manner to* (with dat.).

**gelīefan (gelȳfan)** (§ 126), *believe*;

**ðæt hēo on ænigne eorl gelȳfde** 137, 6 = *that she believed in any earl*.

**gelimpan** (§ 110), *happen, be fulfilled*.

**gelimplīc**, *proper, fitting*.

**gelȳfan**, see **gelīefan**.

**gelȳfed**, *weak, infirm* [left (hand)].

**gēnde**, see **gīeman**.

**gemet**, n., *meter, measure, ability*.

**gemētan** (§ 126), *meet*.

**gemōn**, see **gemunan**.

**gemunan** (§ 136), *remember*; indic. pres. 1st and 3d sing., **gemōn**; pret. sing., **gemunde**.

**gemynd**, n., *memory, memorial*;

**tō gemyndum** 147, 5 = *as a memorial*.

**gemyndgian** (-mynian) (§ 130), *remember*;  
mid hine gemyndgade 115, 15 = *he treasured in his memory*;  
gemyne mæ̅rðo 138, 15 = *be mindful of glory* (imperative 2d sing.).  
**gemyndig**, *mindful of* (with gen.).  
**genāp**, see **genīpan**.  
**geneahhe**, *enough, often*;  
genehost, superlative, *very often*.  
**genip**, n., *mist, darkness*.  
**genīpan** (§ 102), *grow dark*.  
**genīwian** (§ 130), *renew*.  
**genōh**, *enough*.  
**genumen**, see **niman**.  
**geoc**, n., *yoke*.  
**gēocor**, *dire, sad*.  
**geogoð**, f., *youth, young people, young warriors*. (See **duguð**.)  
**geond** (**giond**) (§ 94, (2)), *throughout* [yond].  
**geondhweorfan** (§ 110), *pass over, traverse, recall*;  
ðonne māga gemynd mōd geondhweorfeð 150, 15 = *then his mind recalls the memory of kinsmen*.  
**geondscēawian** (§ 130), *survey, review*;  
georne geondscēawað 150, 16 = *eagerly surveys them*.  
**geondðenc(e)an** (§ 128), *think over, consider*.  
**geong** (§ 96, (2)), *young*;  
giengest, (**gingest**), superlative, *youngest, latest, last*.  
**geong** = **gŌng**, see **gŌngan** (imperative 2d sing.).  
**gēong** (**gīong**), see **gŌngan** (pret. 3d sing.).  
**georn** (**giorn**), *eager, desirous, zealous, sure* [yearn].  
**georne**, *eagerly, certainly*;  
wiste ðē geornor 143, 5 = *knew the more certainly*.  
**geornfulnes**, f., *eagerness, zeal*.  
**geornlice**, *eagerly, attentively*.  
**geornor**, see **georne**.  
**gerēcednes**, f., *narration* [**reccan**].

**gerisenlīc**, *suitable, becoming*.

**gerȳman** (§ 126), *extend*, (trans.) [**rūm**].

**gesǣliglīc**, *happy, blessed* [silly].

**gesamnode**, see **gesƆmnian**.

**gesceaft**, f., *creature, creation, destiny* [**scieppan**].

**gesceap**, n., *shape, creation, destiny* [**scieppan**].

**gescieldan** (§ 127), *shield, defend*.

**gesealde**, see **gesęllan**.

**geseglian** (§ 130), *sail*.

**geselda**, m., *comrade*.

**gesęllan** (§ 128), *give*.

**gesēon** (**gesīon**) (§ 118), see, **observe**; pres. indic. 3d sing., **gesihǫ**.

**geset**, n., *habitation, seat*.

**gesęttan** (§ 127), *set, place, establish*.

**gesewen**, see **sēon**, **gesēon** (past part.).

**gesewenlīc**, *seen, visible* [seen-like].

**gesiglan** (§ 127), *sail*.

**gesihǫ**, see **gesēon**.

**gesittan** (§ 115, Note 2), *sit* (trans., as *to sit a horse, to sit a boat, etc.*); *sit, sit down* (intrans.).

**geslægen**, see **slēan** (§ 118).

**gesƆmnian** (§ 130), *assemble, collect*.

**gesƆmning**, f., *collection, assembly*.

**gestāh**, see **gestīgan**.

**gestaǫelian** (§ 130), *establish, restore* [**standan**].

**gesteal**, n., *establishment, foundation* [stall].

**gestīgan** (§ 102), *ascend, go* [stīle, stīrrup, sty (= a rising on the eye)].

**gestrangian** (§ 130), *strengthen*.

**gestrēon**, n., *property*.

**gestrȳnan** (§ 126), *obtain, acquire* [**gestrēon**].

**gesweorcān** (§ 110), *grow dark, become sad*;

**For ǫon ic geǫencān ne mæg geond ǫās woruld for hwan mōdsefa mīn ne**

**gesweorce** 151, 3-4 = *Therefore in this world I may not understand wherefore my mind does not grow “black as night.”* (Brooke.)

**geswīcan** (§ 102), *cease, cease from* (with gen.).

**getæġ**, n., *something told, narrative.*

**getruma**, m., *troop, division.*

**geðanc**, m., n., *thought.*

**geðeah**, see **geðicgan**.

**geðenc(e)an** (§ 128), *think, remember, understand, consider.*

**geðēodan** (§ 126), *join.*

**geðēode** (-ðīode), n., *language, tribe.*

**geðēodnis**, f., *association;*  
but in 112, 2 this word is used to render the Lat. *appetitus* = *desire.*

**geðicg(e)an** (§ 115, Note 2), *take, receive;* pret. indic. 3d sing., **geðeah**.

**geðungen**, part.-adj., *distinguished, excellent* [ðēon, *to thrive*].

**geðyldig**, *patient* [ðolian].

**geweald** (**gewald**), n., *control, possession, power* [wield].

**geweorc**, n., *work, labor.*

**geweorðian** (§ 130), *honor* [to attribute worth to].

**gewīcian** (§ 130),  *dwell.*

**gewin(n)**, n., *strife, struggle.*

**gewindan** (§ 110), *flee* [wend].

**gewissian** (§ 130), *guide, direct.*

**gewītan** (§ 102), *go, depart.*

**geworht**, see **gewyrcean**.

**gewrit**, n., *writing, Scripture.*

**gewunian** (§ 130), *be accustomed, be wont.*

**gewyrc(e)an** (§ 128), *work, create, make, produce.*

**gid(d)**, n., *word, speech.*

**giefan** (§ 115), *give.*

**giefstōl**, m., *gift-stool, throne.*

**giefu** (**gifu**), f., *gift.*

**gielp** (**gilp**), m., n., *boast* [yelp].



**gīeman** (**gēman**) (§ 126), *endeavor, strive*.

**gīet** (**gīt, gýt**), *yet, still*.

**gif** (**gyf**), *if* [not related to *give*].

**gifeðe** (**gyfeðe**), *given, granted*.

**gilp**, see **gielp**.

**gilp-cwide**, m., *boasting speech* [*yelp-speech*].

**gingest**, see **geong** (adj.).

**gihōð** (**gehðu**), f., *care, sorrow, grief*.

**giū** (**iū**), *formerly, of old*.

**glæd** (**glæd**), *glad*.

**glēaw**, *wise, prudent*.

**glīwstæf**, m., *glee, joy*; instr. pl. (used adverbially), **glīwstafum** 150, 16 = *joyfully*.

**God**, m., *God*.

**gōd** (§ 96, (3)), *good*;

mid his **gōdum** 115, 12 = *with his possessions (goods)*.

**godcund**, *divine* [**God**].

**godcundlice**, *divinely*.

**gold**, n., *gold*.

**gold-æht**, f., *gold treasure*.

**gold-fāh**, *gold-adorned*.

**gold-hroden**, part.-adj., *gold-adorned*.

**goldwine**, m., *prince, giver of gold, lord* [gold-friend].

**gomel** (**gomol**), *old, old man*.

**gōngan** (**gangan**) (§ 117), *go* [gang]; imperative 2d sing., **geong**; pret. sing., **gēong, gīong, gēng**; past part., **gegōngen, gegangen**.

The most commonly used pret. is **ēode**, which belongs to **gān** (§ 134).

**Gotland**, n., *Jutland* (in *Ohthere's Second Voyage*), *Gothland* (in *Wulfstan's Voyage*).

**gram**, *grim, angry, fierce, the angry one*.

**grāp**, f., *grasp, clutch, claw*.

**grētan** (§ 126), *greet, attack, touch*.

**grōwan** (§ 117, (2)), *grow*.

**gryre-lēoð**, n., *terrible song* [grisly lay].  
**guma**, m., *man, hero* [groom; see § 65, Note 1].  
**gūð**, f., *war, battle*.  
**gūð-bill**, n., *sword* [war-bill].  
**gūð-gewāede**, n., *armor* [war-weeds].  
**gūð-hrēð**, f., *war-fame*.  
**gūð-wine**, m., *sword* [war-friend].  
**gyddian** (§ 130), *speak formally, chant* [giddy; the original meaning of *giddy* was *mirthful*, as when one sings].  
**gyf**, see **gif**.  
**gyfeðe**, see **gifeðe**.  
**gyldan** (**gielðan**) (§ 110), *pay*; indic. 3d sing., **gylt**.  
**gylden**, *golden* [gold].

## H.

**habban** (§ 133), *have*.  
**hād**, m., *order, rank, office, degree* [-hood, -head].  
**hæfta**, m., *captive*.  
**hægel** (**hagol**), m., *hail*; instr. sing., **hagle**.  
**hæglfaru**, f., *hail-storm* [hail-faring].  
**hæle**, see **hæleð**.  
**hǣl**, f., *hail, health, good luck*.  
**hæleð** (**hæle**), m., *hero, warrior*.  
**hǣt**, see **hātan**.  
**hǣðen**, *heathen*.  
**Hǣðum** (**æt Hǣðum**), *Haddeby* (= *Schleswig*).  
**hāl**, *hale, whole*.  
**hālettan** (§ 127), *greet, salute* [to hail].  
**Halfdene**, *Halfdane* (proper name).  
**hālga**, m., *saint*.  
**Hālgoland**, *Halgoland* (in ancient Norway).  
**hālig**, *holy*.

**hālignes**, f., *holiness*.

**hām**, m., *home*; dat. sing., **hāme**, **hām** (p. 104, Note);  
used adverbially in **hām ēode** 112, 18 = *went home*.

**hand**, see **hōnd**.

**hār**, *hoary, gray*.

**hāt**, *hot*.

**hātan** (§ 117, Note 2), *call, name, command*; pret. sing., **heht**, **hēt**.

**hātheort**, *hot-hearted*.

**hätte**, see **hātan**.

**hē**, **hēo**, **hit** (§ 53), *he, she, it*.

**hēafod**, n., *head*.

**hēah** (§ 96, (2)), *high*; acc. sing, m., **hēanne**.

**hēah-sele**, m., *high hall*.

**hēahðungen**, *highly prosperous, aristocratic* [**hēah** + past part. of **ðēon**  
(§ 118)].

**healdan** (§ 117), *hold, govern, possess*;  
144, 9 = *hold up, sustain*.

**healf**, adj., *half*.

**healf**, f., *half, side, shore*.

**heall**, f., *hall*.

**heals**, m., *neck*.

**hēan**, *abject, miserable*.

**hēanne**, see **hēah**.

**heard**, *hard*.

**heard-hicgende**, *brave-minded* [hard-thinking].

**hearm-scaða**, m., *harmful foe* [harm-scather].

**hearpe**, f., *harp*.

**heaðo-dēor**, *battle-brave*.

**heaðo-mære**, *famous in battle*.

**heaðo-wylm**, m., *flame-surge, surging of fire* [battle-welling].

**hēawan** (§ 117), *hew, cut*.

**heþban**, **hōf**, **hōfon**, **gehafen** (§ 117), *heave, lift, raise*.

**hefig**, *heavy, oppressive*.

**heht**, see **hātan**.

**helan** (§ 114), *conceal*.

**heġll**, f., *hell*.

**helm**, m., *helmet*.

**Helmingas**, m. pl., *Helmings* (Wealtheow, Hrothgar's queen, is a Helming).

**help**, f., *help*.

**helpan** (§ 110), *help* (with dat.).

**heofon**, m., *heaven*.

**heofonlīc**, *heavenly*.

**heofonrīce**, n., *kingdom of heaven*.

**hēold**, see **healdan**.

**heolstor** (-ster), n., *darkness, concealment, cover* [holster].

**heora** (**hiera**), see **hē**.

**heord**, f., *care, guardianship* [hoard].

**heoro-drēorig**, *bloody* [sword-dreary].

**Heorot**, *Heorot, Hart* (the famous hall which Hrothgar built).

**heorte**, f., *heart*.

**hēr**, *here, hither*;

in the *Chronicle* the meaning frequently is *at this date, in this year*: 99, 1.

**heře**, m., *Danish army*.

**heřenis**, f., *praise*.

**heřgian** (§ 130), *raid, harry, ravage* [**heře**].

**heřgung**, f., *harrying, plundering*.

**heřian** (**heřigean**) (§ 125), *praise*.

**hērsumedon**, see **hīersumian**.

**hēt**, see **hātan**.

**hider** (**hieder**), *hither*.

**hiera**, see **hē**.

**hīeran** (**hȳran**) (§ 126), *hear, belong*.

**hierde**, m., *shepherd, instigator* [keeper of a herd].

**hierdebōc**, f., *pastoral treatise* [shepherd-book, a translation of Lat. *Cura*

*Pastoralis*].

**hīerra**, see **hēah**.

**hīersumian** (**hȳr-**, **hēr-**) (§ 130), *obey* (with dat.).

**hige** (**hyge**), m., *mind, heart*.

**hige-ðihtig**, *bold-hearted*.

**hild**, f., *battle*.

**hilde-dēor**, *battle-brave*.

**hilde-mecg**, m., *warrior*.

**hilde-sæd**, *battle-sated*.

**hin-fūs**, *eager to be gone* [hence-ready].

**hira**, see **hē**.

**hlāw** (**hlāw**), m., *mound, burial mound* [Ludlow and other place-names, *low* meaning *hill*].

**hlāford**, m., *lord, master* [loaf-ward?].

**hleahtor**, m., *laughter*.

**hlēo**, m., *refuge, protector* [lee].

**hlīfian** (§ 130), *rise, tower*.

**hlyn**, m., *din, noise*.

**hlynsian** (§ 130), *resound*.

**hof**, n., *court, abode*.

**hogode**, see **hycgan**.

**holm**, m., *sea, ocean*.

**hƿond** (**hand**), f., *hand*;

**on gehwæðre hƿond**, *on both sides*.

**hord**, m., n., *hoard, treasure*.

**hordcofa**, m., *breast, heart* [hoard-chamber]

**hors**, n., *horse*.

**horshwæl**, m., *walrus*.

**hrædwyrde**, *hasty of speech* [**hræd** = *quick*].

**hrægel**, n., *garment*; dat. sing., **hrægle**.

**hrān**, m., *reindeer*.

**hraðe**, *quickly, soon* [*rath-er*].

**hrēo** (**hrēoh**), *rough, cruel, sad*.

**hrēosan** (§ 109), *fall*.

**hrēran** (§ 126), *stir*.

**hreðer**, m., n., *breast, purpose*; dat. sing., **hreðre**.

**hrīm**, m., *rime, hoarfrost*.

**hrīmceald**, *rime-cold*.

**hring**, m., *ring, ring-mail*.

**hrīð**, f. (?), *snow-storm*.

**hrōf**, m., *roof*.

**Hrones næss**, literally *Whale's Ness, whale's promontory*;  
see **næss**.

**hrūse**, f., *earth* [**hrēosan**: deposit].

**hryre**, m., *fall, death* [**hrēosan**].

**hryðer**, n., *cattle* [rinder-pest].

**hryðig**, *ruined* (?), *storm-beaten*; nom. pl. m., **hryðge**.

**hū**, *how*.

**Humbre**, f., *river Humber*.

**hund**, *hundred*.

**hunig**, n., *honey*.

**hunta**, m., *hunter*.

**huntoð** (-tað), m., *hunting*.

**hūru**, adv., *about*.

**hūs**, n., *house*.

**hwā**, **hwæt** (§ 74), *who? what?* **swā hwæt swā** (§ 77, Note), *whatsoever*;  
indefinite, *any one, anything*;  
for **hwan** (instr.), *wherefore*.

**hwæl**, m., *whale*.

**hwælhunta**, m., *whale-hunter*.

**hwælhuntað**, m., *whale-fishing*.

**hwæer**, *where?* **hwæer ... swā**, *wheresoever*;  
**wel hwæer**, *nearly everywhere*.

**hwæthwugu**, *something*.

**hwæðer**, *whether, which of two?*

**hwæðre**, *however, nevertheless.*

**hwēne**, see **hwōn**.

**hweorfan** (§ 110), *turn, go.*

**hwider**, *whither.*

**hwīl**, f., *while, time;*

**ealle ðā hwīle ðe**, *all the while that;*

**hwīlum** (instr. pl.), *sometimes.*

**hwilc** (**hwylc**, **hwelc**) (§ 74, Note 1), *which? what?*

**hwōn**, n., *a trifle;*

**hwēne** (instr. sing.), *somewhat, a little.*

**hwōnan**, *when.*

**hȳ**, see **hīe**.

**hycgan** (§ 132), *think, resolve;* pret. 3d sing., **hogode**.

**hȳd**, f., *hide, skin.*

**hyge**, see **hige**.

**hyra** (**hiera**), see **hē**.

**hȳran**, see **hīeran**.

**hyrde**, see **hierde**.

**hys** (**his**), see **hē**.

**hyt** (**hit**), see **hē**.

## I.

**ic** (§ 72), *I.*

**īdel**, *idle, useless, desolate.*

**īdes**, f., *woman, lady.*

**ieldra**, adj., see **eald**.

**ieldra**, m., *an elder, parent, ancestor.*

**iernan** (**yrnan**) (§ 112), *run.*

**īglōnd** (**īgland**), n., *island.*

**ilca** (**ylca**), *the same [of that ilk].*

**Ilfing**, *the Elbing.*

**in**, *in, into* (with dat. and acc.);

**in on**, *in on, to, toward*.

**inbryrdnis** (-nes), f., *inspiration, ardor*.

**indryhten**, *very noble*.

**ingong**, m., *entrance*.

**innan**, adv., *within, inside*;

**on innan**, *within*.

**innanbordes**, adv.-gen., *within borders, at home*.

**inne**, adv., *within, inside*.

**intinga**, m., *cause, sake*.

**inweardlice**, *inwardly, fervently*.

**inwid-sorg** (**inwit-sorh**), f., *sorrow caused by an enemy*.

**inwit-ðanc**, m., *hostile intent*.

**Īraland**, n., *Ireland* (but in *Ohthere's Second Voyage*, *Iceland* is probably meant).

**īren**, n., *iron, sword*; gen. pl., **īrenna**, **īrena**.

**īren-bend**, m., f., *iron-band*.

**īu**, see **gīu**.

## K.

**kynerīce**, see **cynerīce**.

**kyning**, see **cyning**.

**kyrtel**, m., *kirtle, coat*.

## L.

**Læden**, *Latin*.

**Lædengedēode** (-ðīode), n., *Latin language*.

**Lædenware** (§ 47), m. pl., *Latin people, Romans*.

**læfan** (§ 126), *leave*.

**læge**, see **licgan**.

**Læland**, n., *Laaland* (in Denmark).

**læen**, n., *loan*;



**tō lǣne** 121, 2 = *as a loan*.

**lǣne**, adj., *as a loan, transitory, perishable*.

**lǣran** (§ 126), *teach, advise, exhort* [**lār**].

**lǣssa, lǣsta**, see **lȳtel**.

**lǣstan** (§ 127), *last, hold out* (intrans.); *perform, achieve* (trans.).

**lǣtan** (§ 117), *let, leave*.

**lāf**, f., *something left, remnant, heirloom* (often a sword);

**tō lāfe**, *as a remnant, remaining*.

**lagulād**, f., *sea* [*lake-way, lād = leading, direction, way*].

**land**, see **lōnd**.

**lang**, see **lōng**.

**Langaland**, n., *Langeland* (in Denmark).

**lār**, f., *lore, teaching*.

**lārcwide**, m., *precept, instruction*, [**cwide** < **cweðan**].

**lārēow**, m., *teacher* [**lār** + **ðēow**].

**lāst**, m., *track, footprint* [*shoemaker's last*];

**on lāst(e)**, *in the track of, behind* (with dat.).

**lāð**, *loathsome, hateful*.

**lēas**, *loose, free from, bereft of* (with gen.).

**lēasung**, f., *leasing, deception, falsehood*.

**lēcgan** (§ 125, Note), *lay*.

**lēfdon**, see **līefan**.

**leger**, n., *lying in, illness* [**licgan**].

**lēng**, see **lōnge**.

**lēngra**, see **lōng**.

**lēod**, m., *prince, chief*.

**lēod**, f., *people, nation* (the plural has the same meaning).

**lēod-scipe**, m., *nation* [*people-ship*].

**lēof**, *dear* [*lief*].

**leoht**, adj., *light*.

**lēoht**, n., *light, brightness*.

**leornere**, m., *learner, disciple*.

**leornian** (§ 130), *learn*.

**leornung** (**liornung**), f., *learning*.

**lēoð**, n., *song* [lay?].

**lēoðcræft**, m., *poetic skill* [lay-craft].

**lēoðsƿong**, n., *song, poem*.

**lēt**, see **lætan**.

**libban** (§ 133), *live*; pres. part., **lifigende**, *living, alive*.

**līc**, n., *body, corpse* [lich-gate, Lichfield].

**licgan** (§ 115, Note 2), *lie, extend, flow, lie dead*;

3d sing. indic. pres., **ligeð**, **līð**.

**līchama** (**-hƿoma**), m., *body* [body-covering].

**līcian** (§ 130), *please* (with dat.) [like].

**līc-sār**, n., *body-sore, wound in the body*.

**līefan** (**lēfan**) (§ 126), *permit, allow* (with dat.) [grant leave to].

**līf**, n., *life*.

**līf-dagas**, m. pl., *life-days*.

**lifigende**, see **libban**.

**līg**, m., *flame, fire*.

**ligeð**, see **licgan**.

**lim**, n., *limb*.

**list**, f., *cunning*; dat. pl., **listum**, is used adverbially = *cunningly*.

**līð**, see **licgan**.

**lof**, m., *praise, glory*.

**lƿnd** (**land**), n., *land, country*.

**lƿng** (**lang**) (§ 96, (2)), *long*.

**lƿnge** (**lange**) (§ 97, (2)), *long*;

**lƿnge on dæg**, *late in the day*.

**lufan**, see **lufu**.

**lufian** (**lufigean**) (§ 131), *love*.

**luflice**, *lovingly*.

**lufu**, f., *love*; dat. sing. (weak), **lufan**.

**lungre**, *quickly*.

**lust**, m., *joy* [lust];

**on lust**, *joyfully*.

**lȳt**, indeclinable, *little, few* (with partitive gen.).

**lȳtel** (**lītel**) (§ 96, (2)), *little, small*.

## M.

**mā**, see **micle** (§ 97, (2)).

**mæg**, see **magan**.

**māeg**, m., *kinsman*; nom. pl., **māgas** (§ 27, (2)).

**mægen** n., *strength, power* [might and main].

**mægen-ellen**, n., *main strength, mighty courage*.

**mægð**, f., *tribe*.

**mægðhād**, m., *maidenhood, virginity*.

**mæ̅l-gesceaft**, f., *appointed time* [**mæ̅l** = *meal, time*].

**mæ̅ran** (§ 126), *make famous, honor*.

**mæ̅re**, *famous, glorious, notorious*.

**mæ̅rðo** (**mæ̅rðo**, **mæ̅rð**), f., *glory, fame*.

**mæsseprēost**, m., *mass-priest*.

**mæ̅st**, see **micel**.

**magan** (§ 137), *be able, may*.

**māgas**, see **māeg**.

**magu** (**mago**), m., *son, man*.

**maguðegn**, m., *vassal, retainer*.

**man(n)**, see **mōn(n)**.

**mancus**, m., *mancus, half-crown*; gen. pl., **mancessa**.

**māndæd**, f., *evil deed*.

**manig**, see **mōnig**.

**manigfeald**, see **mōnigfeald**.

**māra**, see **micel**.

**maðelian** (§ 130), *harangue, speak*.

**māðum** (**māððum**), m., *gift, treasure, jewel*; gen. pl., **māðma**.

**māððumgyfa**, m., *treasure-giver, lord*.  
**māððum-wela**, m., *wealth of treasure*.  
**mē**, see **ic**.  
**meaht**, f., *might, power*.  
**meahte**, see **magan**.  
**mearc**, f., *boundary, limit* [mark, march].  
**mearg (mearh)**, m., *horse*; nom. pl., **mēaras**.  
**mearð**, m., *marten*.  
**mec**, see **ic**.  
**medmicel**, *moderately large, short, brief*.  
**medu (medo)**, m., *mead*.  
**medu-bęnc**, f., *mead-bench*.  
**medu-ful**, n., *mead-cup*.  
**medu-heall**, f., *mead-hall*.  
**męn**, see **mŃn(n)**.  
**męngan** (§ 127), *mingle, mix*.  
**męnigu (męnigeo)**, f., *multitude* [many].  
**męnniscnes**, f., *humanity, incarnation* [man].  
**meolc**, f., *milk*.  
**Mēore**, *Möre* (in Sweden).  
**męre**, m., *lake, mere, sea* [mermaid].  
**Meretūn**, m., *Merton* (in Surrey).  
**mētan** (§ 126), *meet, find*.  
**Metod (Meotod, Metud)**, m., *Creator, God*.  
**metod-sceaft**, f., *appointed doom, eternity*.  
**micel** (§ 96, (3)), *great, mighty, strong, large* [mickle];  
    **māra**, *more, stronger, larger*.  
**micle (micele)**, *greatly, much*.  
**miclum**, (§ 93, (4)), *greatly*.  
**mid**, *with, amid, among* (with dat. and acc.).  
**middangeard**, m., *earth, world* [middle-yard].  
**middeward**, *midward, toward the middle*.

**Mierce**, m. pl., *Mercians*.

**mihte**, see *magan*.

**mīl**, f., *mile* [Lat. mille].

**mildheortnes**, f., *mild-heartedness, mercy*.

**milts**, f., *mildness, mercy*.

**mīn** (§ 76), *my, mine*.

**mislic**, *various*.

**missenlic**, *various*.

**mōd**, n., *mood, mind, courage*.

**mōdcearig**, *sorrowful of mind*.

**mōdega, mōdga**, see **mōdig**.

**mōdgeðanc**, m., *purpose of mind*.

**mōdig**, *moody, brave, proud*.

**mōdor**, f., *mother*.

**mōdsefa**, m., *mind, heart*.

**mōn(n)** (**man, mann**) (§ 68; § 70, Note), m., *man, one, person, they*.

**mōna**, m., *moon*.

**mōnað** (§ 68, (1), Note), m., *month* [**mōna**]; dat. sing., **mōnðe**.

**mōn(n)cynn**, n., *mankind*.

**mōndryhten**, m., *liege lord*.

**mōnian** (**manian**) (§ 130), *admonish*.

**mōnig** (**manig, mōneg, mænig**), *many*.

**mōnigfeald** (**manig-**), *manifold, various*.

**mōnðe**, see **mōnað**.

**mōr**, m., *moor*.

**morgen**, m., *morning*; dat. sing., **morgen(n)e**.

**morðor-bealu** (**-bealo**), n., *murder* [murder-bale];  
see **ðurfan**.

**mōste**, see **mōtan**.

**mōtan** (§ 137), *may, be permitted, must*.

**mund-gripe**, m., *hand-grip*.

**munuc**, m., *monk* [Lat. monachus].

**munuchād**, m., *monkhood, monastic rank*.

**mūð**, m., *mouth*.

**myntan** (§ 127), *be minded, intend*; pret. indic. 3d sing., **mynte**.

**mynster**, n., *monastery* [Lat. *monasterium*]; dat. sing., **mynstre**.

**mȳre**, f., *mare* [**mearh**].

**myrð**, f., *joy, mirth*;

**mōdes myrðe** 142, 17 = *with joy of heart*.

## N.

**nā** (**nō**), *not* [**ne ā** = *n-ever*];

**nā ne**, *not, not at all*.

**nabban** (p. 32, Note), *not to have*.

**nædre**, f., *serpent, adder*.

**næfde**, see **nabban**.

**næfre**, *never*.

**nænig** (§ 77), *no one, no, none*.

**nære**, **næren**, **næron**, see § 40, Note 2.

**næs** = **ne wæs**, see § 40, Note 2.

**næss**, m., *ness, headland*.

**nāht**, see **nōht**.

**nālæs** (**nāles**), *not at all* [**nā ealles**].

**nam**, see **niman**.

**nama**, see **nōma**.

**nāmon**, see **niman**.

**nān**, *not one, no, none* [**ne ān**].

**nānwuht**, n., *nothing* [no whit].

**ne**, *not*.

**nē**, *nor*;

**nē ... nē**, *neither ... nor*.

**nēah** (§ 96, (4)), *near*.

**nēah**, adv., *nigh, near, nearly, almost*; comparative, **nēar**, *nearer*.

**neaht**, see **niht**.

**nēalēcan** (-lāēcan) (§ 126), *draw near to, approach* (with dat.).  
**nēar**, see **nēah**, adv.  
**nēat**, n., *neat, cattle*.  
**nēmnan** (§ 127), *name*.  
**nemðe**, (**nymðe**), *except, unless*.  
**neṛian** (§ 125), *save, preserve*.  
**nēten**, see **nīeten**.  
**nīedbeðearf**, *needful, necessary*.  
**nīehst**, see **nēah** (§ 96, (4)).  
**nīeten** (**nēten**), n., *neat, beast, cattle*.  
**nigontīene**, *nineteen*.  
**niht** (**neaht**) (§ 68, (1), Note), *night*.  
**nihthelm**, m., *night-helm, shade of night*.  
**nihtscūa**, m., *shadow of night*.  
**niht-weorc**, n., *night-work*.  
**niman** (§ 114), *take, gain* [nimble, numb].  
**nīpan** (§ 102), *grow dark, darken*.  
**nis**, see § 40, Note 2.  
**nīð**, m., *malice, violence*.  
**nīwe**, *new, novel, startling*.  
**nō**, see **nā**.  
**nōht** (**nāht**, **nā-wiht**), n., *not a whit, naught, nothing; not, not at all*.  
**nōhwæðer** (**nāhwæðer**), *neither*;  
    **nōhwæðer nē ... ne ... nē ... ne** 118, 8 = *neither ... nor*.  
**nolde**, **noldon** = **ne wolde**, **ne woldon**, see **willan**.  
**nōma** (**nama**), m., *name*.  
**norð** (§ 97, (1)), *north, in the north, northwards*.  
**norðan** (§ 93, (5)), *from the north*;  
    **be norðan**, see § 94, (4).  
**Norð-Dene**, m. pl., *North-Danes*.  
**norðeward**, *northward*.  
**Norðhymbre**, m. pl., *Northumbrians*.

**Norðmanna**, see **Norðmǫn**.

**Norðmęn**, see **Norðmǫn**.

**norðmest**, see **norð**.

**Norðmǫn** (-man) (§ 68, (1)), *Norwegian*.

**norðor**, see **norð**.

**norðryhte**, *northward*.

**norðweard**, *northward*.

**Norðweg**, *Norway*.

**nose**, f., *cape, naze* [ness, nose].

**notu**, f., *office, employment*.

**nū**, *now; now that, seeing that*;

nū ðā 138, 13 = *now then*.

**nȳhst** (nīehst), see **nēah**.

**nymðe**, see **nemðe**.

**nysse**, see **nytan**.

**nyste**, see **nytan**.

**nyt(t)**, *useful, profitable*.

**nytan** (nitan < ne witan, § 136), *not to know*;

3d sing. pret., **nysse**, **nyste**.

## O.

**of** (§ 94, (1)), *of, from, concerning*.

**ofer** (§ 94, (2)), *over, across, after, in spite of* (see 144, 14);

ofer eorðan 142, 9 = *on earth*.

**ofer**, adv., *over, across*.

**oferfēran** (§ 126), *go over, traverse*.

**oferfrēosan** (§ 109), *freeze over*.

**oferfrozen**, see **oferfrēosan**.

**ofgiefan** (§ 115), *give up, relinquish*.

**ofost**, f., *haste*.

**ofslægen**, see **ofslēan**.

**ofslēan** (§ 118), *slay off, slay*.



**ofslōge**, see **ofslēan**.

**oft**, *oft, often*; superlative, **oftost**.

**on** (§ 94, (3)), *in, into, on, against, to, among, during*;

**on fīf oððe syx** 109, 6 = *into five or six parts*;

**on weg** 140, 10 = *away*;

**on innan** 144, 5 = *within*;

**on unriht** 145, 15 = *falsely*.

**onbærnan** (§ 126), *kindle, inspire*.

**oncȳðð**, f., *distress, suffering*.

**oṅd** (**and**), *and*.

**oṅdsaca**, m., *adversary*.

**oṅdswarian** (§ 130), *answer*.

**oṅdweard**, adj., *present*.

**onfēng**, see **onfōn**.

**onfeohtan** (§ 110), *fight*.

**onfindan** (§ 110), *find out, discover*; pret. indic. 3d sing., **onfunde**.

**onfōn** (§ 118), *receive, seize violently*.

**onfunde**, see **onfindan**.

**ongēan**, prep., *against, towards* (with dat. and acc.).

**ongēan**, adv., *just across, opposite*.

**Ongelcynn** (**Angel-**), n., *Angle kin, English people, England*.

**Ongelðēod** (**Angel-**), f., *the English people or nation*.

**ongemang** (**-mōng**), *among* (with dat.).

**ongietan** (**-gitan**) (§ 115), *perceive, see, understand*.

**onginnan** (§ 110), *begin, attempt*.

**onlūtan** (§ 109), *bow, incline* (intrans.) [lout = a stooper].

**onrīdan** (§ 102), *ride against, make a raid on*.

**onsendan** (§ 127), *send*.

**onslāepan** (**onslēpan**) (§ 126), *fall asleep, sleep*.

**onspōnnan** (§ 117), *loosen* [unspan]; pret. 3d sing. indic., **onspēon**.

**onspringan** (§ 110), *spring apart, unspring*.

**onstāl**, m., *institution, supply*.

**onstēllan** (§ 128), *establish*; pret. 3d sing. indic., **onstealde**.

**onwæcnan** (§ 127), *awake* (intrans.).

**onweald** (-wald), m., *power, authority* [wield].

**onwēndan** (§ 127), *change, overturn* [to wind].

**ōr**, n., *beginning*.

**oð** (§ 94, (2)), *until, as far as* (of time and place);

**oð ðæt, oð ðe**, *until*.

**oðberan** (§ 114), *bear away*.

**ōðer**, *other, second*;

**ōðer ... oðer**, *the one ... the other*.

**oðfæstan** (§ 127), *set to* (a task).

**oðfeallan** (§ 117) *fall off, decline*.

**oððe**, *or*;

**oððe ... oððe**, *either ... or*.

## P.

**plega**, m., *play, festivity*.

**port**, m., *port* [Lat. portus].

## R.

**rād**, f., *raid*.

**rāecan** (§ 126), *reach*; pret. 3d sing., **rāehte**.

**ræst**, see **reſt**.

**Rēadingas**, m. pl., *Reading* (in Berkshire).

**reccan** (§ 128), *narrate, tell*; pret. pl. indic., **rehton, reahton**.

**reccelēas**, *reckless, careless*.

**reced**, n., *house, hall*.

**regnian** (**rēnian**) (§ 130), *adorn, prepare*; past part., **geregnad**.

**regollic** (-lec), *according to rule, regular*.

**rēn-weard**, m., *mighty warden, guard, champion*.

**reſt** (**ræst**), f., *rest, resting-place, bed*.

**rēðe**, *fierce, furious*.

**rīce**, *rich, powerful, aristocratic.*  
**rīce**, n., *realm, kingdom* [bishopric].  
**rīcsian** (§ 130), *rule.*  
**rīdan** (§ 102), *ride.*  
**rīman** (§ 126), *count* [rime].  
**rīnc**, m., *man, warrior.*  
**rōd**, f., *rood, cross;*  
    **rōde tācen**, *sign of the cross.*  
**Rōmware**, m. pl., *Romans.*  
**rōnd (rand)**, m., *shield.*  
**rūn**, f., *rune, secret meditation* [to round = to whisper].  
**rycene (ricene)**, *quickly, rashly.*  
**ryhtnorðanwind**, m., *straight north-wind.*

## S.

**sǣ**, f., *sea.*  
**sǣ-bāt**, m., *sea-boat.*  
**sǣd**, n., *seed.*  
**sǣde**, see **sęcgan**.  
**sǣl**, m., f., *time, happiness* [sil-ly];  
    **on sǣlum** 137, 22 = *joyous, merry.*  
**sǣlan** (§ 126), *bind.*  
**sǣ-līðend** (§ 68, (3)), m., *seafarer* (nom. and acc. pl. same as nom. and acc. sing.).  
**sam ... sam**, *whether ... or.*  
**same**, *similarly;*  
    **swā same**, *just the same, in like manner.*  
**samod**, see **sōmod**.  
**sanct**, m., f., *saint* [Lat. sanctus]; gen. sing., **sanctæ**, f., **sancti**, m.  
**sang**, see **sōng**.  
**sār**, f., n., *sore, pain, wound.*  
**sār**, adj., *sore, grievous.*

**sāre**, *sorely*.

**sāwan** (§ 117,) *sow*.

**sāwol**, f., *soul*; oblique cases, sing., **sāwle** (§ 39, Note).

**scacan** (*sceacan*) (§ 116), *shake, go, depart*; past part., **scacen**, **sceacen**.

**scadu-helm**, m., *cover of night, shadow-covering* [shadow-helm];

**scadu-helma gesceapu**, see Note on 138, 2-6.

**sceal**, see **sculan**.

**scēap**, n., *sheep*.

**scēat**, m., *corner, region, quarter* [sheet];

**eorðan scēatta** 139, 14 = *in the regions of earth* (gen. used as locative).

**scēawi(g)an** (§ 130), *view, see* [shew].

**scēawung**, f., *seeing*.

**sceolde**, see **sculan**.

**scēop** (**scōp**), see **scieppan**.

**scēowyrhta**, m., *shoe-maker*.

**sceððan** (§ 116), *injure, scathe* (with dat.).

**scieppan** (§ 116), *create*.

**Scieppend**, m., *Creator*.

**scīnan** (§ 102), *shine*.

**scip** (**scyp**), n., *ship*.

**scipen**, n., *stall*.

**sciprāp**, m., *ship-rope, cable*.

**scīr**, f., *shire, district*.

**Sciringeshēal**, m., *Sciringesheal* (in Norway).

**scolde**, see **sculan**.

**scōmu**, f., *shame, dishonor*.

**Scōnēg**, f., *Skaane* (southern district of the Scandinavian peninsula).

**scopgereord**, n., *poetic language*.

**scriðan** (§ 102), *stride, stalk*.

**sculan** (§ 136; § 137, Note 2), *shall, have to, ought*.

**Scyldingas**, m. pl., *Scyldings, Danes*.

**scyp**, see **scip**.

**Scyppend**, see **Scieppend**.

**sē, sēo, ðæt** (§ 28; § 28, Note 3), *the; that; he, she, it; who, which, that;*  
**ðæs**, *from then, afterwards, therefore;*  
**ðæs ðe** (p. 110, l. 2), *with what;*  
**ðȳ ... ðæt** (p. 110, ll. 7-8), *for this reason ... because;*  
**tō ðāem ... swā**, *to such an extent ... as;*  
**ðy (ðē)**, *the* (adverbial, with comparatives);  
**ðȳ ... ðȳ**, *the ... the.*

**seah**, see **sēon**.

**sealde**, see **sęllan**.

**searo-gimm**, m., *artistic gem, jewel.*

**searo-nīð**, m., *cunning hatred, plot.*

**searo-ðoꝛc**, m., *cunning thought, device.*

**Seaxe**, m. pl., *Saxons, Saxony.*

**sēc(e)an** (§ 128), *to seek, visit, meet.*

**sęcg**, m., *man, warrior.*

**sęgan** (§ 132), *say, tell.*

**sefa**, m., *mind, spirit.*

**sēfte**, *more easily* (comparative of **sōfte**).

**segel**, m., n., *sail*; dat. sing. = **segle**.

**seglian** (§ 130), *sail.*

**sęle**, m., *hall.*

**sęledrēam**, m., *hall joy, festivity.*

**sęle-ful**, n., *hall cup.*

**sęlesęcg**, m., *hall warrior, retainer.*

**sēlest**, *best* (no positive).

**self (sylf)**, *self, himself* (declined as strong or weak adjective).

**sęllan (syllan)** (§ 128), *give* [sell, han(d)sel].

**sęmninga**, *forthwith, straightway.*

**sęndan** (§ 127), *send.*

**sēo**, see **sē**.

**sēoc**, *sick.*

**seofon (syfan)**, *seven.*

**seolh**, m., *seal*; gen. sing. = **sēoles** (§ 27, (3)).  
**sēon** (§ 118), *see, look*.  
**seonu**, f., *sinew*; nom. pl., **seonowe**.  
**sess**, m., *seat*.  
**sibb**, f., *friendship, peace* [gossip].  
**sidu** (**siodu**), m., *custom, morality, good conduct*.  
**sīe**, see **bēon**.  
**siex**, *six*;  
    **syxa** (**siexa**) **sum**, see **sum**.  
**siextig**, *sixty*.  
**sige**, m., *victory*.  
**sige-folc**, n., *victorious people*.  
**sige-lēas**, *victory-less, of defeat*.  
**sige-rōf**, **victory-famed**, *victorious*.  
**sige-wæpen**, n., *victory-weapon*.  
**siglan** (§ 127), *sail*.  
**Sillende**, *Zealand*.  
**sinc**, n., *treasure, prize*.  
**sinc-fæ̅t**, n., see 137, 1 [treasure-vat].  
**sinc-ðegu**, f., *receiving of treasure* [ðicgan].  
**sind**, **sint**, **sindon**, see **bēon**.  
**singan** (§ 110), *sing*.  
**sittan** (§ 115, Note 2), *sit, take position*.  
**sīð**, m., *journey, time*;  
    **forman sīðe** 139, 2 = *the first time* (instr. sing.).  
**sīðian** (§ 130), *journey*.  
**siððan**, *after that, afterwards, after*.  
**slæp**, m., *sleep*.  
**slæpan** (§ 117), *sleep*.  
**slēan** (§ 118), *slay* [slow-worm].  
**slītan** (§ 102), *slit, tear to pieces*.  
**slīðen**, *savage, perilous*.

**smæl**, *narrow*.  
**smalost**, see **smæl**.  
**snāw**, m., *snow*.  
**snot(t)or**, *wise, prudent*.  
**sōhte**, see **sēcan**.  
**sƿmod (samod)**, *together*.  
**sōna**, *soon*.  
**sƿng**, m., n., *song, poem*.  
**sƿngcræft**, m., *art of song and poetry*.  
**sorg (sorh)**, f., *sorrow*.  
**sōð**, *true*.  
**sōð**, n., *truth*;  
    **tō sōðe**, *for a truth, truly, verily*.  
**sōð-fæst**, *truthful, just*.  
**sōðlice**, *truly*.  
**spēd**, f., *possessions, success, riches* [speed].  
**spēdig**, *rich, prosperous*.  
**spell**, n., *story, tale* [gospel].  
**spēow**, see **spōwan**.  
**spere**, n., *spear*.  
**spor**, n., *track, footprint*.  
**spōwan** (§ 117), *succeed* (impersonal with dat.).  
**spræc**, f., *speech, language*.  
**sprecan** (§ 115), *speak*.  
**spyrian (spyrigean)** (§ 130), *follow* (intrans.) [**spor**].  
**stæf**, *staff, rod*; pl. = *literature, learning*.  
**stæhrān**, m., *decoy-reindeer*.  
**stælwierðe**, *serviceable* (see p. 56, Note 2).  
**stær**, n., *story, narrative* [Lat. *historia*].  
**stæð**, n., *shore*.  
**stān**, m., *stone, rock*.  
**stān-boga**, m., *stone-arch* [stone-bow].

**standan**, see **stǫndan**.

**stānhlið** (-hleoð), n., *stone-cliff*.

**stapol**, m., *column* [staple].

**starian** (§ 125), *stare, gaze*.

**stęde**, m., *place*.

**stelan** (§ 114), *steal*.

**stęnt**, see **stǫndan**.

**stęorbord**, n., *starboard, right side of a ship*.

**stęppan** (§ 116), *step, advance*; pret. indic. 3d sing., **stǫp**.

**stilnes**, f., *stillness, quiet*.

**stǫndan** (§ 116), *stand*.

**stǫp**, see **stęppan**.

**storm**, m., *storm*.

**stǫw**, f., *place* [stow, and in names of places].

**strang**, see **strǫng**.

**stręngest**, see **strǫng**.

**strǫng** (§ 96, (2)), *strong*.

**styccemǣlum**, *here and there*.

**sum** (§ 91, Note 2), *some, certain, a certain one*;

**hę syxa sum** 104, 25 = *he with five others*.

**sumera**, see **sumor**.

**sumor**, m., *summer*; dat. sing. = **sumera**.

**sumorlida**, m., *summer-army*.

**sundor**, *apart*.

**sunne**, f., *sun*.

**sunu**, m., *son*.

**sūð**, *south, southwards*.

**sūðan** (§ 93, (5)), *from the south*;

**be sūðan**, *south of* (§ 94, (4)).

**sūðeward**, *southward*.

**sūðryhte**, *southward*.

**swā** (swǣ), *so, as, how, as if*;



**swā swā**, *just as, as far as*;  
**swā ... swā**, *the ... the, as ... as*;  
**swā hwæt swā**, *whatsoever* (§ 77, Note).

**swāes**, *beloved, own*.

**swæð**, n., *track, footprint* [swath].

**swaðul**, m.? n.?, *smoke*.

**swealh**, see **swelgan**.

**swefan** (§ 115), *sleep, sleep the sleep of death*.

**swefn**, n., *sleep, dream*.

**swēg**, m., *sound, noise*.

**swegle**, *bright, clear*.

**swēlan** (§ 126), *burn* [sweal].

**swelgan** (§ 110), *swallow*; pret. indic. 3d sing., **swealh**; subj., **swulge**.

**swellan** (§ 110), *swell*.

**Swēoland**, n., *Sweden*.

**Swēom**, m., dat. pl., *the Swedes*.

**sweotol**, *clear*.

**sweotole**, *clearly*.

**swęrian** (§ 116), *swear*.

**swēte**, *sweet*.

**swētnes** (-nis), f., *sweetness*.

**swift** (swyft), *swift*.

**swilc** (swylc) (§ 77), *such*.

**swilce**, *in such manner, as, likewise; as if, as though* (with subj.).

**swimman** (§ 110), *swim*.

**swīn** (swȳn), n., *swine, hog*.

**swīnsung**, f., *melody, harmony*.

**swīðe** (swȳðe), *very, exceedingly, greatly*.

**swīðost**, *chiefly, almost*.

**swōr**, see **swęrian**.

**swulge**, see **swelgan**.

**swuster** (§ 68, (2)), f., *sister*.

**swylce** (swelce), see **swilce**.  
**swȳn**, see **swīn**.  
**swynsian** (§ 130), *resound*.  
**swȳðe**, see **swīðe**.  
**swȳð-ferhð**, *strong-souled*.  
**sylf**, see **self**.  
**syll**, f., *sill, floor*.  
**syllan**, see **sęllan**.  
**symbol**, n., *feast, banquet*.  
**symle**, *always*.  
**synd**, see **bēon**.  
**syn-dolh**, n., *ceaseless wound, incurable wound*.  
**syndriglice**, *especially*.  
**synn**, f., *sin*.  
**syn-scaða**, m., *ceaseless scather, perpetual foe*.  
**syn-snæd**, f., *huge bit [ceaseless bit]*.  
**syððan**, see **siððan**.  
**syx**, see **siex**.  
**syxtig**, see **siextig**.

## T.

**tācen**, n., *sign, token*; dat. sing., **tācne** (§ 33, Note).  
**tāecan** (§ 128), *teach*.  
**tam**, *tame*.  
**tela**, *properly, well [til]*.  
**tęllan** (§ 128), *count, deem [tell]*; pret. 3d sing., **tealde**.  
**Tęmes**, f., *the Thames*.  
**tēon**, *arrange, create*; pret. sing., **tēode**.  
**Terfinna**, m., gen. pl., *the Terfins*.  
**tēð**, see **tōð**.  
**tīd**, f., *tide, time, hour*.  
**tīen** (tȳn), *ten*.

**til(l)**, *good*.

**tīma**, m., *time*.

**tintreglīc**, *full of torment*.

**tō** (§ 94, (1)), *to, for, according to, as*;

**tō hrōfe** 114, 2 = *for (as) a roof* [cf. Biblical *to wife*, modern *to boot*].

**tō**, adv., *too*.

**tōbreca**n (p. 81, Note 2), *break to pieces, knock about*.

**tōdǣlan** (§ 126), *divide*.

**tōemnes** (**tō emnes**) (§ 94, (4)), *along, alongside*.

**tōforan** (§ 94, (1)), *before*.

**tōgeðēodan** (§ 126), *join*.

**tōhopa**, m., *hope*.

**tōlicgan** (§ 115, Note 2), *separate, lie between*;

3d sing, indic. = **tōlīð**.

**tōlīð**, see **tōlicgan**.

**tolūcan** (§ 109, Note 1), *destroy* [the prefix **tō** reverses the meaning of **lūcan**, *to lock*].

**torn**, m., *anger, insult*.

**tōð** (§ 68, (1)), m., *tooth*.

**tōweard** (§ 94, (1)), *toward*.

**tōweard**, adj., *approaching, future*.

**trēow**, f., *pledge, troth*.

**trēownes**, f., *trust*.

**Trūsō**, *Drausen* (a city on the Drausensea).

**tūn**, m., *town, village*.

**tunge**, f., *tongue*.

**tūngerēfa**, m., *bailiff* [town-reeve; so sheriff = shire-reeve].

**tungol**, n., *star*.

**twā**, see **twēgen**.

**twēgen**, (§ 89), *two, twain*.

**twēntig**, *twenty*.

**tȳn**, see **tīen**.

## Ð.

**ðā**, *then, when*;

**ðā ... ðā**, *when ... then*;

**ðā ðā**, *then when = when*.

**ðā**, see **sē**.

**ðāer**, *there, where*;

**ðāer ðāer**, *there where = where*;

**ðāer ... swā** 142, 4 = *wheresoever*; 145, 6 = *if so be that*.

**ðæs**, *afterwards, therefore, thus, because*;

see **sē**.

**ðæt** (**ðætte** = **ðæt ðe**), *that, so that*.

**ðafian** (§ 130), *consent to*.

**ðanc**, see **ðonc**.

**ðancian** (**ðoncian**) (§ 130), *thank*.

**ðanon**, see **ðonan**.

**ðās**, see **ðēs**.

**ðē**, see **sē** (instr. sing.) and **ðū**.

**ðe** (§ 75), *who, whom, which, that*.

**ðēah**, *though, although*;

**ðēah ðe**, *though, although*.

**ðearf**, see **ðurfan**.

**ðearf**, f., *need, benefit*.

**ðēaw**, m., *habit, custom* [thews].

**ðegn** (**ðegen**), m., *servant, thane, warrior*.

**ðenc(e)an** (§ 128), *think, intend*.

**ðening** (**-ung**), f., *service*;

the pl. may mean *book of service* (117, 17).

**ðēod**, f., *people, nation*.

**ðēoden**, m., *prince, lord*.

**ðēodscipe**, m., *discipline*.

**ðēon** (**ðywan**) (§ 126), *oppress* [ðēow].

**ðēow**, m., *servant*.

**ðēowa**, m., *servant*.

**ðēowotdōm** (**ðīowot-**), m., *service*.

**ðēs** (§ 73), *this*.

**ðider**, *thither*.

**ðiderweard**, *thitherward*.

**ðīn** (§ 76), *thine*.

**ðing**, n., *thing*;

**ǣnige ðinga**, see 140, 15, Note.

**ðingan** (§ 127), *arrange, appoint*.

**ðis**, see **ðēs**.

**ðissum**, see **ðēs**.

**ðōhte, ðōhton**, see **ðencean**.

**ðolian** (§ 130), *endure* [thole].

**ðoƿnan**, *thence*.

**ðoƿnc**, m., *thanks*.

**ðone**, see **sē**.

**ðonne**, *than, then, when*;

**ðonne ... ðonne**, *when ... then*.

**ðrāg**, f., *time*.

**ðrēa-nȳd**, f., *compulsion, oppression, misery* [throe-need].

**ðrēora**, see **ðrīe**.

**ðridda**, *third*.

**ðrie** (**ðrȳ**) (§ 89), *three*.

**ðrīm**, see **ðrīe**.

**ðrīst-hȳdig**, *bold-minded*.

**ðrītig**, *thirty*.

**ðrōwung**, f., *suffering*.

**ðrȳ**, see **ðrīe**.

**ðrym(m)**, m., *renown, glory, strength*.

**ðrȳð**, f., *power, multitude* (pl. used in sense of sing.);

**asca ðrȳðe** 152, 23 = *the might of spears*.

**ðrȳð-ærn**, n., *mighty house, noble hall*.

**ǫrȳð-word**, n., *mighty word, excellent discourse.*

**ǫū** (§ 72), *thou.*

**ǫūhte**, see **ǫyncan**.

**ǫurfan** (§ 136), *need*; pres. indic. 3d sing., **ǫearf**; pret. 3d sing., **ǫorfte**;

**for-ǫām mē wītan ne ǫearf Waldend fīra morðor-bealo māga 145, 17 =**  
*therefore the Ruler of men need not charge me with the murder of kinsmen.*

**ǫurh** (§ 94, (2)), *through.*

**ǫus**, *thus.*

**ǫūsend**, *thousand.*

**ǫȳ**, see **sē**.

**ǫyder**, see **ǫider**.

**ǫyncan** (§ 128), *seem, appear* (impersonal);

**mē ǫyncǫ**, *methinks, it seems to me*;

**him ǫūhte**, *it seemed to him.*

## U.

**ūhta**, m., *dawn*; gen. pl., **ūhtna**.

**unbeboht**, *unsold* [**bebycgan** = *to sell*].

**uncūð**, *unknown, uncertain* [uncouth].

**under**, *under* (with dat. and acc.).

**understōndan** (§ 116), *understand.*

**underðēodan** (-ðīedan) (§ 126), *subject to*; past part. **underðēoded** = *subjected to, obedient to* (with dat.).

**unforbærned**, *unburned.*

**unfrið**, m., *hostility.*

**ungefōge**, *excessively.*

**ungemete**, *immeasurably, very.*

**ungesewenlīc**, *invisible* [past part. of **sēon** + **līc**].

**unlyfigend**, *dead, dead man* [unliving].

**unlȳtel**, *no little, great.*

**unriht**, n., *wrong*;

**on unriht**, see **on**.

**unrihtwīsnes**, f., *unrighteousness.*

**unspēdig**, *poor*.

**unwearnum**, *unawares*.

**ūp** (**ūpp**), *up*.

**ūpāstīgnes**, f., *ascension* [**stīgan**].

**ūp-lang**, *upright*.

**ūre** (§ 76), *our*.

**usses** = gen. sing. neut. of **ūser**, see **ic**.

**ūt**, *out, outside*.

**ūtan**, *from without, outside*.

**ūtanbordes**, *abroad*.

**ūtgong**, m., *exodus*.

**uton**, *let us* (with infin.) [literally *let us go* with infin. of purpose (see 137, 19-20, Note); **uton** = **wuton**, corrupted form of 1st pl. subj. of **wītan**, *to go*].

**ūt-weard**, *outward bound, moving outwards*.

## W.

**wāc**, *weak, insignificant*.

**wacian** (§ 130), *watch, be on guard*; imperative sing., **waca**.

**wadan** (§ 116), *go, tread* [*wade*].

**wæg**, m., *wave*.

**Wægmundigas**, m. *Wægmundings* (family to which Beowulf and Wiglaf belonged).

**wæl**, n., *slaughter, the slain*.

**wæl-blēat**, *deadly* [*slaughter-pitiful*].

**wælgīfre**, *greedy for slaughter*.

**wæl-ræ̅s**, m., *mortal combat* [*slaughter-race*].

**wæl-rēow**, *fierce in strife*.

**wælsliht** (-sleht), m., *slaughter*.

**wælstōw**, f., *battle-field* [*slaughter-place*];

**wælstōwe gewald**, *possession of the battle-field*.

**wæpen**, n., *weapon*.

**wæ̅re**, see **bēon**.

**wæs**, see **bēon**.

**wæter**, n., *water*.

**waldend**, see *wealdend*.

**wan** (**won**), *wan, dark*.

**wanhȳdig**, *heedless, rash*.

**wānigean** (**wānian**) (§ 130), *bewail, lament* (trans.) [*whine*].

**warian** (§ 130), *attend, accompany*.

**wāt**, see **witan**.

**waðum**, m., *wave*; gen. pl., **waðema**.



**weal(l)**, m., *wall, rampart*.

**wealdend** (§ 68, (3)), *wielder, ruler, lord*.

**wealh**, m., *foreigner, Welshman*.

**wealhstōd**, m., *interpreter, translator*.

**weallan** (§ 117), *well up, boil, be agitated*; pret. 3d. sing. indic., **wēoll**.

**wealsteal(l)**, m., *wall-place, foundation*.

**weard**, m., *ward, keeper*.

**wearð**, see **weorðan**.

**weaxan** (§ 117), *wax, grow*.

**weg**, m., *way*;

**hys weg**, see § 93, (3);

**on weg**, see **on**.

**wel(l)**, *well, readily*.

**wela**, m., *weal, prosperity, riches*.

**welm**, see **wielm**.

**wēnan** (§ 126), *ween, think, expect*.

**węndan** (§ 127), *change, translate* [**wend**, **windan**].

**węnian** (§ 130), *entertain*;

**węnian mid wynn** 149, 20 = *entertain joyfully*;

**węnede tō wiste** 149, 27 = *feasted* (trans.).

**Weonodland (Weonoðland)**, n., *Wendland*.

**weorc**, n., *work, deed*.

**weorold (weoruld)**, see **woruld**.

**weorpan** (§ 110), *throw*.

**weorðan** (§ 110), *be, become*.

**wer**, m., *man* [**werwulf**].

**wērig**, *weary, dejected*.

**werod**, n., *army, band*.

**wesan**, see **bēon**.

**Wesseaxe**, m. pl., *West Saxons*; gen. pl. = **Wesseaxna**.

**west**, *west, westward*.

**westanwind**, m., *west wind*.

**wēste**, *waste*.

**wēsten**, n., *waste, desert*.

**Westsǣ**, f., *West Sea (west of Norway)*.

**Westseaxe**, m. pl., *West Saxons, Wessex*.

**wīc**, n., *dwelling [bailiwick]*.

**wīcian** (§ 130), *stop, lodge, sojourn [wīc]*.

**wīdre**, adv., *farther, more widely (comparative of wīde)*.

**wīdsǣ**, f., *open sea*.

**wielm (welme)**, m., *welling, surging flood [weallan]*.

**wīf**, n., *wife, woman*.

**wīg**, m., n., *war, battle*.

**wiga**, m., *warrior*.

**wild**, *wild*.

**wildor**, n., *wild beast, reindeer; dat. pl. = wildrum (§ 33, Note)*.

**willa**, m., *will, pleasure; gen. pl., wilna (138, 16)*.

**willan** (§ 134; § 137, Note 3), *will, intend, desire*.

**wilnung**, f., *wish, desire;*

for **ðǣre wilnunga 119, 4 = purposely**.

**Wiltūn**, m., *Wilton (in Wiltshire)*.

**wīn**, n., *wine*.

**wīn-ærn**, n., *wine-hall*.

**Wīnburne**, f., *Wimborne (in Dorsetshire)*.

**wīnd**, m., *wind*.

**wīne**, m., *friend*.

**Wīnedas**, m. pl., *the Wends, the Wend country*.

**wīne-dryhten**, m., *friendly lord*.

**wīnelēas**, *friendless*.

**wīnemæg**, m., *friendly kinsman*.

**wīngeard**, m., *vineyard*.

**wīnnan** (§ 110), *strive, fight [win]*.

**wīnsæl**, n., *wine-hall*.

**wīn-sele**, m., *wine-hall*.

**winter**, m., *winter*; dat. sing. = **wintra**.

**wintercearig**, *winter-sad, winter-worn*.

**wīs**, *wise*.

**wīsdōm**, m., *wisdom*.

**wīse**, *wisely*.

**wīse**, f., *manner, matter, affair* [in this wise].

**wīs-fæst**, *wise* [wise-fast; cf. shame-faced = shamefast].

**wīs-hycgende**, *wise-thinking*.

**Wīse**, f., *the Vistula*.

**Wīsemūða**, m., *the mouth of the Vistula*.

**wisse**, see **witan**.

**wist**, f., *food, feast*.

**wita**, m., *wise man, councillor*.

**witan** (§ 136), *know, show, experience*.

**wītan** (§ 102), *reproach, blame* (with acc. of thing, dat. of person).

**wīte**, n., *punishment*.

**Wītland**, n., *Witland* (in Prussia).

**wið** (§ 94, (3)), *against, toward, with*;

**wið ēastan and wið ūpp on emnlange ðǣm bȳnum lande**, *toward the east, and upwards along the cultivated land*;

**wið earm gesæt 139, 11** = *supported himself on his arm*;

**genęred wið nīðe** (dat.) **143, 11** = *had preserved it from (against) violence*.

**wiðerwinna**, m., *adversary*.

**wiðfōn** (§ 118), *grapple with* (with dat.).

**wiðhabban** (§ 133), *withstand, resist* (with dat.).

**wiðstōndan** (§ 116), *withstand, resist* (with dat.).

**wlōnc**, *proud*.

**wōd**, see **wadan**.

**wolcen**, n., *cloud* [welkin]; dat. pl., **wolcnum**.

**wolde**, see **willan**.

**wōma**, m., *noise, alarm, terror*.

**wōn**, see **wan**.

**wōp**, n., *weeping*.

**word**, n., *word*.

**wōrian** (§ 130), *totter, crumble*.

**worn**, m., *large number, multitude*.

**woruld**, f., *world*;

**tō worulde būtan æghwīlcum ende 102, 18** = *world without end*.

**woruldcund**, *worldly, secular*.

**woruldhād**, m., *secular life* [world-hood].

**woruldrīce**, n., *world-kingdom, world*.

**woruldðing**, n., *worldly affair*.

**wræclāst**, m., *track or path of an exile*.

**wrāð**, *wroth, angry; foe, enemy*.

**wrītan** (§ 102), *write*.

**wucu**, f., *week*.

**wudu**, m., *wood, forest*.

**wuldor**, n., *glory*.

**Wuldorfæder** (§ 68, (2)), m., *Father of glory*; gen. sing., **Wuldorfæder**.

**Wuldur-cyning**, m., *King of glory*.

**wulf**, m., *wolf*.

**wund**, f., *wound*.

**wund**, *wounded*.

**wunden**, *twisted, woven, convolute* (past part. of **windan**).

**wundor**, n., *wonder, marvel*.

**wundrian** (§ 130), *wonder at* (with gen.).

**wurdon**, see **weorðan**.

**wurðan**, see **weorðan**.

**wylf**, f., *she wolf*.

**wyllað**, see **willan**.

**wyn-lēas**, *joyless*.

**wynn**, f., *joy, delight*.

**wynsum**, *winsome, delightful*.

**wyrc(e)an** (§ 128), *work, make, compose*.

**wyrd**, f., *weird, fate, destiny*.  
**wyrhta**, m., *worker, creator* [-wright].  
**wyrm**, m., *worm, dragon, serpent*.  
**wyrmlica**, m., *serpentine ornamentation*.  
**wyrð (weorð)**, *worthy*; see 114, 7-9, Note.

## Y.

**ylca**, see **ilca**.  
**yldan** (§ 127), *delay, postpone* [eald].  
**yldu**, f., *age* [eld].  
**yambe (ymb)** (§ 94, (2)), *about, around, concerning* [umwhile];  
    ðæs ymb iii niht 99, 2 = *about three nights afterwards*.  
**yamb-ēode**, see **yamb-gān**.  
**yambe-sittend**, *one who sits (dwells) round about another, neighbor*.  
**yamb-gān** (§ 134), *go about, go around, circle* (with acc.).  
**yrfe-weard**, m., *heir*.  
**yrnan**, see **iernan**.  
**yrre**, *ireful, angry*.  
**yteren**, *of an otter* [otor].  
**ȳðan** (§ 126), *lay waste* (as by a deluge) [ȳð = wave].

## II. GLOSSARY.



### MODERN ENGLISH—OLD ENGLISH.

A B C D E F G H I K L  
M N O P Q R S T V W Y

#### A.

**a**, *ān* (§ 77).

**abide**, *bīdan* (§ 102), *ābīdan*.

**about**, *be* (§ 94, (1)), *ymbe* (§ 94, (2));

to write about, *writan be*;

to speak about (= of), *sprecan ymbe*;

about two days afterwards, *ðæs ymbe twēgen dagas*.

**adder**, *nædre* (§ 64).

**afterwards**, *ðæs* (§ 93, (3)).

**against**, *wið* (§ 94, (3)), *on* (§ 94, (3)).

**Alfred**, *Ælfred* (§ 26).

**all**, *eall* (§ 80).

**also**, *ēac*.

**although**, *ðēah* (§ 105, 2).

**always**, *ā*; *ealne weg* (§ 98, (1)).

**am**, *eom* (§ 40).

**an**, see **a**.

**and**, *ƿnd* (*and*).

**angel**, *engel* (§ 26).

**animal**, *dēor* (§ 32).

**are**, *sind*, *sint*, *sindon* (§ 40).

**army**, *werod* (§ 32);

**Danish army**, *here* (§ 26);

**English army**, *fierd* (§ 38).

**art**, *earth* (§ 40).

**Ashdown**, *Æscesdūn* (§ 38).

**ask**, *biddan* (§ 65, Note 3; § 115, Note 2).

**away**, *aweg*.

## B.

**battle-field**, *wælstōw* (§ 38).

**be**, *bēon* (§ 40);

**not to be**, see § 40, Note 2.

**bear**, *beran* (§ 114).

**because**, *for ðāem* (ðe), *for ðon* (ðe).

**become**, *weorðan* (§ 110).

**before** (temporal conjunction), *ǣr*, *ǣr ðāem ðe* (§ 105, 2).

**begin**, *onginnan* (§ 107, (1); § 110).

**belong to**, *belimpan tō* + dative (§ 110).

**best**, see **good**.

**better**, see **good**.

**bind**, *bindan* (§ 110).

**bird**, *fugol* (§ 26).

**bite**, *bītan* (§ 102).

**body**, *līc* (§ 32).

**bone**, *bān* (§ 32).

**book**, *bōc* (§ 68).

**both ... and**, *ǣgðer ge ... ge*.

**boundary**, *mearc* (§ 38).

**boy**, *cnapa* (§ 64).

**break**, *brēotan* (§ 109), *brecan*, *ābrecan* (§ 114).

**brother**, *brōðor* (§ 68, (2)).

**but**, *ac*.

**by**, *frōm* (*fram*) (§ 94, (1); § 141, Note 1).

## C.

**Cædmon**, *Cædmōn* (§ 68, (1)).  
**call**, *hātan* (§ 117, (1)).  
**cease, cease from**, *geswīcan* (§ 102).  
**child**, *bearn* (§ 32).  
**choose**, *cēosan* (§ 109).  
**Christ**, *Crīst* (§ 26).  
**church**, *cirice* (§ 64).  
**come**, *cuman* (§ 114).  
**comfort**, *frōfor* (§ 38).  
**companion**, *gefēra* (§ 64).  
**consolation**, *frōfor* (§ 38).  
**create**, *gescieppan* (§ 116).

## D.

**Danes**, *Dene* (§ 47).  
**day**, *dæg* (§ 26).  
**dead**, *dēad* (§ 80).  
**dear** (= beloved), *lēof* (§ 80).  
**deed**, *dǣd* (§ 38).  
**die**, *cwelan* (§ 114).  
**division** (of troops), *gefylce* (§ 32), *getruma* (§ 64).  
**do**, *dōn* (§ 134).  
**door**, *dor* (§ 32), *duru* (§ 52).  
**drink**, *drincan* (§ 110).  
**during**, *on* (§ 94, (3)). See also § 98.  
 **dwell in**, *būan on* (§ 126, Note 2).

## E.

**earl**, *eorl* (§ 26).  
**endure**, *drēogan* (§ 109).



**England**, *Englaland* (§ 32).  
**enjoy**, *brūcan* (§ 62, Note 1; § 109, Note 1).  
**every**, *ælc* (§ 77).  
**eye**, *ēage* (§ 64).

## F.

**father**, *fæder* (§ 68, (2)).  
**field**, *feld* (§ 51).  
**fight**, *feohtan*, *gefeohtan* (§ 110).  
**find**, *findan* (§ 110).  
**finger**, *finger* (§ 26).  
**fire**, *fȳr* (§ 32).  
**fisherman**, *fiscere* (§ 26).  
**foreigner**, *wealh* (§ 26).  
**freedom**, *frēodōm* (§ 26).  
**friend**, *wine* (§ 45), *frēond* (§ 68, (3)).  
**friendship**, *frēondscipe* (§ 45).  
**full**, *full* (with genitive) (§ 80).

## G.

**gain the victory**, *sige habban*, *sige niman*.  
**gift**, *giefu* (§ 38).  
**give**, *giefan* (with dative of indirect object) (§ 115).  
**glad**, *glæd* (§ 81).  
**glove**, *glōf* (§ 38).  
**go**, *gān* (§ 134), *faran* (§ 116).  
**God**, *God* (§ 26).  
**good**, *gōd* (§ 80).

## H.

**Halgoland**, *Hālgoland* (§ 32).  
**hall**, *heall* (§ 38).

**hand**, *hƿnd* (§ 52).  
**hard**, *heard* (§ 80).  
**have**, *habban* (§ 34);  
    **not to have**, *nabban* (p. 32, Note).  
**he**, *hē* (§ 53).  
**head**, *hēafod* (§ 32).  
**hear**, *hīeran* (§ 126).  
**heaven**, *heofon* (§ 26).  
**help**, *helpan* (with dative) (§ 110).  
**herdsman**, *hierde* (§ 26).  
**here**, *hēr*.  
**hither**, *hider*.  
**hold**, *healdan* (§ 117, (2)).  
**holy**, *hālig* (§ 82).  
**horse**, *mearh* (§ 26), *hors* (§ 32).  
**house**, *hūs* (§ 32).

## I.

**I**, *ic* (§ 72).  
**in**, *on* (§ 94, (3)).  
**indeed**, *sōðlice*.  
**injure**, *scęððan* (with dative) (§ 116).  
**it**, *hit* (§ 53).

## K.

**king**, *cyning* (§ 26).  
**kingdom**, *rīce* (§ 32), *cynerīce* (§ 32).

## L.

**land**, *lƿnd* (§ 32).  
**language**, *sprǣc* (§ 38), *geðēode* (§ 32).  
**large**, *micel* (§ 82).

**leisure**, *ǣmetta* (§ 64).

**let us**, *uton* (with infinitive).

**limb**, *lim* (§ 32).

**little**, *lytel* (§ 82).

**live in**, *būan on* (§ 126, Note 2).

**lord**, *hlāford* (§ 26).

**love**, *lufian* (§ 131).

**love** (noun), *lufu* (§ 38).

## M.

**make**, *wyrcean* (§ 128).

**man**, *seċg* (§ 26), *mōn* (§ 68, (1)).

**many**, *mōnig* (§ 82).

**mare**, *mȳre* (§ 64).

**mead**, *medu* (§ 51).

**Mercians**, *Mierce* (§ 47).

**milk**, *meolc* (§ 38).

**month**, *mōnað* (§ 68, (1), Note 1).

**mouth**, *mūð* (§ 26).

**much**, *micel* (§ 96, (3)), *micle* (§ 97, (2)).

**murderer**, *bōna* (§ 64).

**my**, *mīn* (§ 76).

## N.

**natives**, *lōndlēode* (§ 47).

**nephew**, *nefa* (§ 64).

**new**, *nīwe* (§ 82).

**Northumbrians**, *Norðymbre* (§ 47).

**not**, *ne*.

## O.

**of**, see **about**.

**on**, *on* (§ 94, (3)), *ofer* (§ 94, (2)).

**one**, *ān* (§ 89);

**the one ... the other**, *ōðer ... oðer*.

**other**, *oðer* (§ 77).

**our**, *ūre* (§ 76).

**ox**, *oxa* (§ 64).

## P.

**place**, *stōw* (§ 38).

**plundering**, *hergung* (§ 38).

**poor**, *earm* (§ 80), *unspēdig* (§ 82).

**prosperous**, *spēdig* (§ 82).

## Q.

**queen**, *cwēn* (§ 49).

## R.

**reindeer**, *hrān* (§ 26).

**remain**, *bīdan* (§ 102), *ābīdan*.

**retain possession of the battle-field**, *āgan wælstōwe gewald*.

**rich**, *rīce* (§ 82), *spēdig* (§ 82).

**ride**, *rīdan* (§ 102).

## S.

**say**, *cweðan* (§ 115), *secgan* (§ 133).

**scribe**, *bōcere* (§ 26).

**seal**, *seolh* (§ 26).

**see**, *sēon* (§ 118), *gesēon*.

**serpent**, *nædre* (§ 64).

**servant**, *ðēowa* (§ 64), *ðegn* (§ 26).

**shall**, *sculan* (§ 136; § 137, Note 2).

**she**, *hēo* (§ 53).

**shepherd**, *hierde* (§ 26).  
**ship**, *scip* (§ 32).  
**shire**, *scīr* (§ 38).  
**shoemaker**, *scēowyrhta* (§ 64).  
**side, on both sides**, *on gehwæðre hōnd*.  
**six**, *siex* (§ 90).  
**slaughter**, *wæl* (§ 32), *wælsliht* (§ 45).  
**small**, *lȳtel* (§ 82).  
**son**, *sunu* (§ 51).  
**soul**, *sāwol* (§ 38).  
**speak**, *sprecan* (§ 115).  
**spear**, *gār* (§ 26), *spere* (§ 32).  
**stand**, *stōndan* (§ 116).  
**stone**, *stān* (§ 26).  
**stranger**, *wealh* (§ 26), *cuma* (§ 64).  
**suffer**, *drēogan* (§ 109).  
**sun**, *sunne* (§ 64).  
**swift**, *swift* (§ 80).

## T.

**take**, *niman* (§ 110).  
**than**, *ðonne* (§ 96, (6)).  
**thane**, *ðegn* (§ 26).  
**that** (conjunction), *ðæt*.  
**that** (demonstrative), *sē, sēo, ðæt* (§ 28).  
**that** (relative), *ðe* (§ 75).  
**the**, *se, sēo, ðæt* (§ 28).  
**then**, *ðā, ðonne*.  
**these**, see **this**.  
**they**, *hīe* (§ 53).  
**thing**, *ðing* (§ 32).  
**thirty**, *ðrītig*.

**this**, *ðēs, ðēos, ðis* (§ 73).  
**those**, see **that** (demonstrative).  
**thou**, *ðū* (§ 72).  
**though**, *ðēah* (§ 105, 2).  
**three**, *ðrīe* (§ 89).  
**throne, ascend the throne**, *tō rīce fōn*.  
**throw**, *weorpan* (§ 110).  
**to**, *tō* (§ 94, (1)).  
**tongue**, *tunge* (§ 64).  
**track**, *spor* (§ 32).  
**true**, *sōð* (§ 80).  
**truly**, *sōðlice*.  
**two**, *twēgen* (§ 89).

## V.

**very**, *swīðe*.  
**vessel**, *fæt* (§ 32).  
**victory**, *sige* (§ 45).

## W.

**wall**, *weall* (§ 26).  
**warrior**, *sęcg* (§ 26), *eorl* (§ 26).  
**way**, *weg* (§ 26).  
**weapon**, *wāpen* (§ 32).  
**well**, *wel* (§ 97, (2)).  
**Welshman**, *Wealh* (§ 26).  
**went**, see **go**.  
**westward**, *west, westrihte*.  
**whale**, *hwæl* (§ 26).  
**what?** *hwæt* (§ 74).  
**when**, *ðā, ðonne*.  
**where?** *hwær*.

**which**, *ðe* (§ 75).

**who?** *hwā* (§ 74).

**who** (relative), *ðe* (§ 75).

**whosoever**, *swā hwā swā* (§ 77, Note).

**will**, *willan* (§ 134; § 137, Note 3).

**Wilton**, *Wiltūn* (§ 26).

**win**, see **gain**.

**wine**, *wīn* (§ 32).

**wisdom**, *wīsdōm* (§ 26).

**wise**, *wīs* (§ 80).

**with**, *mid* (§ 94, (1));

**to fight with** (= **against**), *gefeohtan wið* (§ 94, (3)).

**withstand**, *wiðstōndan* (with dative) (§ 116).

**wolf**, *wulf* (§ 26), *wylf* (§ 38).

**woman**, *wīf* (§ 32).

**word**, *word* (§ 32).

**worm**, *wyrm* (§ 45).

## Y.

**ye**, *gē* (§ 72).

**year**, *gēar* (§ 32).

**yoke**, *geoc* (§ 32).

**you**, *ðū* (singular), *gē* (plural) (§ 72).

**your**, *ðīn* (singular), *ēower* (plural) (§ 76).

Page 109.7: linenote

vi	v	iv	iii	ii	i	1	2	3	4	5	6
						X					
						XX	X	X			
						XXX	XX	XX	X	X	
-----						XXXX	XXX	XXX	XX	XX	X
_e_ _d_						_c_ _b_ _a_					
where the horsemen						The six parts of the property					
assemble.						placed within one mile.					

End of the Project Gutenberg EBook of Anglo-Saxon Grammar and Exercise Book, by  
C. Alphonso Smith

\*\*\* END OF THIS PROJECT GUTENBERG EBOOK ANGLO-SAXON GRAMMAR \*\*\*

\*\*\*\*\* This file should be named 31277-h.htm or 31277-h.zip \*\*\*\*\*  
This and all associated files of various formats will be found in:  
<https://www.gutenberg.org/3/1/2/7/31277/>

Produced by Louise Hope, Barbara Tozier, Bill Tozier and  
the Online Distributed Proofreading Team at  
<https://www.pgdp.net>

Updated editions will replace the previous one--the old editions  
will be renamed.

Creating the works from public domain print editions means that no  
one owns a United States copyright in these works, so the Foundation  
(and you!) can copy and distribute it in the United States without  
permission and without paying copyright royalties. Special rules,  
set forth in the General Terms of Use part of this license, apply to  
copying and distributing Project Gutenberg-tm electronic works to  
protect the PROJECT GUTENBERG-tm concept and trademark. Project  
Gutenberg is a registered trademark, and may not be used if you  
charge for the eBooks, unless you receive specific permission. If you  
do not charge anything for copies of this eBook, complying with the  
rules is very easy. You may use this eBook for nearly any purpose  
such as creation of derivative works, reports, performances and  
research. They may be modified and printed and given away--you may do  
practically ANYTHING with public domain eBooks. Redistribution is  
subject to the trademark license, especially commercial  
redistribution.

\*\*\* START: FULL LICENSE \*\*\*

THE FULL PROJECT GUTENBERG LICENSE  
PLEASE READ THIS BEFORE YOU DISTRIBUTE OR USE THIS WORK

To protect the Project Gutenberg-tm mission of promoting the free  
distribution of electronic works, by using or distributing this work  
(or any other work associated in any way with the phrase "Project



Gutenberg"), you agree to comply with all the terms of the Full Project Gutenberg-tm License (available with this file or online at <https://gutenberg.org/license>).

## Section 1. General Terms of Use and Redistributing Project Gutenberg-tm electronic works

1.A. By reading or using any part of this Project Gutenberg-tm electronic work, you indicate that you have read, understand, agree to and accept all the terms of this license and intellectual property (trademark/copyright) agreement. If you do not agree to abide by all the terms of this agreement, you must cease using and return or destroy all copies of Project Gutenberg-tm electronic works in your possession. If you paid a fee for obtaining a copy of or access to a Project Gutenberg-tm electronic work and you do not agree to be bound by the terms of this agreement, you may obtain a refund from the person or entity to whom you paid the fee as set forth in paragraph 1.E.8.

1.B. "Project Gutenberg" is a registered trademark. It may only be used on or associated in any way with an electronic work by people who agree to be bound by the terms of this agreement. There are a few things that you can do with most Project Gutenberg-tm electronic works even without complying with the full terms of this agreement. See paragraph 1.C below. There are a lot of things you can do with Project Gutenberg-tm electronic works if you follow the terms of this agreement and help preserve free future access to Project Gutenberg-tm electronic works. See paragraph 1.E below.

1.C. The Project Gutenberg Literary Archive Foundation ("the Foundation" or PGLAF), owns a compilation copyright in the collection of Project Gutenberg-tm electronic works. Nearly all the individual works in the collection are in the public domain in the United States. If an individual work is in the public domain in the United States and you are located in the United States, we do not claim a right to prevent you from copying, distributing, performing, displaying or creating derivative works based on the work as long as all references to Project Gutenberg are removed. Of course, we hope that you will support the Project Gutenberg-tm mission of promoting free access to electronic works by freely sharing Project Gutenberg-tm works in compliance with the terms of this agreement for keeping the Project Gutenberg-tm name associated with the work. You can easily comply with the terms of this agreement by keeping this work in the same format with its attached full Project Gutenberg-tm License when you share it without charge with others.

1.D. The copyright laws of the place where you are located also govern what you can do with this work. Copyright laws in most countries are in a constant state of change. If you are outside the United States, check the laws of your country in addition to the terms of this agreement before downloading, copying, displaying, performing, distributing or creating derivative works based on this work or any other Project Gutenberg-tm work. The Foundation makes no representations concerning the copyright status of any work in any country outside the United States.

1.E. Unless you have removed all references to Project Gutenberg:

1.E.1. The following sentence, with active links to, or other immediate access to, the full Project Gutenberg-tm License must appear prominently whenever any copy of a Project Gutenberg-tm work (any work on which the phrase "Project Gutenberg" appears, or with which the phrase "Project Gutenberg" is associated) is accessed, displayed, performed, viewed, copied or distributed:

This eBook is for the use of anyone anywhere at no cost and with almost no restrictions whatsoever. You may copy it, give it away or re-use it under the terms of the Project Gutenberg License included with this eBook or online at [www.gutenberg.org](http://www.gutenberg.org)

1.E.2. If an individual Project Gutenberg-tm electronic work is derived from the public domain (does not contain a notice indicating that it is posted with permission of the copyright holder), the work can be copied and distributed to anyone in the United States without paying any fees or charges. If you are redistributing or providing access to a work with the phrase "Project Gutenberg" associated with or appearing on the work, you must comply either with the requirements of paragraphs 1.E.1 through 1.E.7 or obtain permission for the use of the work and the Project Gutenberg-tm trademark as set forth in paragraphs 1.E.8 or 1.E.9.

1.E.3. If an individual Project Gutenberg-tm electronic work is posted with the permission of the copyright holder, your use and distribution must comply with both paragraphs 1.E.1 through 1.E.7 and any additional terms imposed by the copyright holder. Additional terms will be linked to the Project Gutenberg-tm License for all works posted with the permission of the copyright holder found at the beginning of this work.

1.E.4. Do not unlink or detach or remove the full Project Gutenberg-tm License terms from this work, or any files containing a part of this work or any other work associated with Project Gutenberg-tm.

1.E.5. Do not copy, display, perform, distribute or redistribute this electronic work, or any part of this electronic work, without prominently displaying the sentence set forth in paragraph 1.E.1 with active links or immediate access to the full terms of the Project Gutenberg-tm License.

1.E.6. You may convert to and distribute this work in any binary, compressed, marked up, nonproprietary or proprietary form, including any word processing or hypertext form. However, if you provide access to or distribute copies of a Project Gutenberg-tm work in a format other than "Plain Vanilla ASCII" or other format used in the official version posted on the official Project Gutenberg-tm web site ([www.gutenberg.org](http://www.gutenberg.org)), you must, at no additional cost, fee or expense to the user, provide a copy, a means of exporting a copy, or a means of obtaining a copy upon request, of the work in its original "Plain Vanilla ASCII" or other form. Any alternate format must include the full Project Gutenberg-tm License as specified in paragraph 1.E.1.

1.E.7. Do not charge a fee for access to, viewing, displaying, performing, copying or distributing any Project Gutenberg-tm works unless you comply with paragraph 1.E.8 or 1.E.9.

1.E.8. You may charge a reasonable fee for copies of or providing access to or distributing Project Gutenberg-tm electronic works provided that

- You pay a royalty fee of 20% of the gross profits you derive from the use of Project Gutenberg-tm works calculated using the method you already use to calculate your applicable taxes. The fee is owed to the owner of the Project Gutenberg-tm trademark, but he has agreed to donate royalties under this paragraph to the Project Gutenberg Literary Archive Foundation. Royalty payments must be paid within 60 days following each date on which you prepare (or are legally required to prepare) your periodic tax returns. Royalty payments should be clearly marked as such and sent to the Project Gutenberg Literary Archive Foundation at the address specified in Section 4, "Information about donations to

the Project Gutenberg Literary Archive Foundation."

- You provide a full refund of any money paid by a user who notifies you in writing (or by e-mail) within 30 days of receipt that s/he does not agree to the terms of the full Project Gutenberg-tm License. You must require such a user to return or destroy all copies of the works possessed in a physical medium and discontinue all use of and all access to other copies of Project Gutenberg-tm works.
- You provide, in accordance with paragraph 1.F.3, a full refund of any money paid for a work or a replacement copy, if a defect in the electronic work is discovered and reported to you within 90 days of receipt of the work.
- You comply with all other terms of this agreement for free distribution of Project Gutenberg-tm works.

1.E.9. If you wish to charge a fee or distribute a Project Gutenberg-tm electronic work or group of works on different terms than are set forth in this agreement, you must obtain permission in writing from both the Project Gutenberg Literary Archive Foundation and Michael Hart, the owner of the Project Gutenberg-tm trademark. Contact the Foundation as set forth in Section 3 below.

1.F.

1.F.1. Project Gutenberg volunteers and employees expend considerable effort to identify, do copyright research on, transcribe and proofread public domain works in creating the Project Gutenberg-tm collection. Despite these efforts, Project Gutenberg-tm electronic works, and the medium on which they may be stored, may contain "Defects," such as, but not limited to, incomplete, inaccurate or corrupt data, transcription errors, a copyright or other intellectual property infringement, a defective or damaged disk or other medium, a computer virus, or computer codes that damage or cannot be read by your equipment.

1.F.2. LIMITED WARRANTY, DISCLAIMER OF DAMAGES - Except for the "Right of Replacement or Refund" described in paragraph 1.F.3, the Project Gutenberg Literary Archive Foundation, the owner of the Project Gutenberg-tm trademark, and any other party distributing a Project Gutenberg-tm electronic work under this agreement, disclaim all liability to you for damages, costs and expenses, including legal fees. YOU AGREE THAT YOU HAVE NO REMEDIES FOR NEGLIGENCE, STRICT LIABILITY, BREACH OF WARRANTY OR BREACH OF CONTRACT EXCEPT THOSE PROVIDED IN PARAGRAPH F3. YOU AGREE THAT THE FOUNDATION, THE TRADEMARK OWNER, AND ANY DISTRIBUTOR UNDER THIS AGREEMENT WILL NOT BE LIABLE TO YOU FOR ACTUAL, DIRECT, INDIRECT, CONSEQUENTIAL, PUNITIVE OR INCIDENTAL DAMAGES EVEN IF YOU GIVE NOTICE OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGE.

1.F.3. LIMITED RIGHT OF REPLACEMENT OR REFUND - If you discover a defect in this electronic work within 90 days of receiving it, you can receive a refund of the money (if any) you paid for it by sending a written explanation to the person you received the work from. If you received the work on a physical medium, you must return the medium with your written explanation. The person or entity that provided you with the defective work may elect to provide a replacement copy in lieu of a refund. If you received the work electronically, the person or entity providing it to you may choose to give you a second opportunity to receive the work electronically in lieu of a refund. If the second copy is also defective, you may demand a refund in writing without further opportunities to fix the problem.

1.F.4. Except for the limited right of replacement or refund set forth in paragraph 1.F.3, this work is provided to you 'AS-IS' WITH NO OTHER WARRANTIES OF ANY KIND, EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, INCLUDING BUT NOT LIMITED TO WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY OR FITNESS FOR ANY PURPOSE.

1.F.5. Some states do not allow disclaimers of certain implied warranties or the exclusion or limitation of certain types of damages. If any disclaimer or limitation set forth in this agreement violates the law of the state applicable to this agreement, the agreement shall be interpreted to make the maximum disclaimer or limitation permitted by the applicable state law. The invalidity or unenforceability of any provision of this agreement shall not void the remaining provisions.

1.F.6. INDEMNITY - You agree to indemnify and hold the Foundation, the trademark owner, any agent or employee of the Foundation, anyone providing copies of Project Gutenberg-tm electronic works in accordance with this agreement, and any volunteers associated with the production, promotion and distribution of Project Gutenberg-tm electronic works, harmless from all liability, costs and expenses, including legal fees, that arise directly or indirectly from any of the following which you do or cause to occur: (a) distribution of this or any Project Gutenberg-tm work, (b) alteration, modification, or additions or deletions to any Project Gutenberg-tm work, and (c) any Defect you cause.

## Section 2. Information about the Mission of Project Gutenberg-tm

Project Gutenberg-tm is synonymous with the free distribution of electronic works in formats readable by the widest variety of computers including obsolete, old, middle-aged and new computers. It exists because of the efforts of hundreds of volunteers and donations from people in all walks of life.

Volunteers and financial support to provide volunteers with the assistance they need are critical to reaching Project Gutenberg-tm's goals and ensuring that the Project Gutenberg-tm collection will remain freely available for generations to come. In 2001, the Project Gutenberg Literary Archive Foundation was created to provide a secure and permanent future for Project Gutenberg-tm and future generations. To learn more about the Project Gutenberg Literary Archive Foundation and how your efforts and donations can help, see Sections 3 and 4 and the Foundation web page at <https://www.pgla.org>.

## Section 3. Information about the Project Gutenberg Literary Archive Foundation

The Project Gutenberg Literary Archive Foundation is a non profit 501(c)(3) educational corporation organized under the laws of the state of Mississippi and granted tax exempt status by the Internal Revenue Service. The Foundation's EIN or federal tax identification number is 64-6221541. Its 501(c)(3) letter is posted at <https://pgla.org/fundraising>. Contributions to the Project Gutenberg Literary Archive Foundation are tax deductible to the full extent permitted by U.S. federal laws and your state's laws.

The Foundation's principal office is located at 4557 Melan Dr. S. Fairbanks, AK, 99712., but its volunteers and employees are scattered throughout numerous locations. Its business office is located at 809 North 1500 West, Salt Lake City, UT 84116, (801) 596-1887, email [business@pgla.org](mailto:business@pgla.org). Email contact links and up to date contact information can be found at the Foundation's web site and official page at <https://pgla.org>

For additional contact information:

Dr. Gregory B. Newby  
Chief Executive and Director  
gbnewby@pglaf.org

#### Section 4. Information about Donations to the Project Gutenberg Literary Archive Foundation

Project Gutenberg-tm depends upon and cannot survive without wide spread public support and donations to carry out its mission of increasing the number of public domain and licensed works that can be freely distributed in machine readable form accessible by the widest array of equipment including outdated equipment. Many small donations (\$1 to \$5,000) are particularly important to maintaining tax exempt status with the IRS.

The Foundation is committed to complying with the laws regulating charities and charitable donations in all 50 states of the United States. Compliance requirements are not uniform and it takes a considerable effort, much paperwork and many fees to meet and keep up with these requirements. We do not solicit donations in locations where we have not received written confirmation of compliance. To SEND DONATIONS or determine the status of compliance for any particular state visit <https://pglaf.org>

While we cannot and do not solicit contributions from states where we have not met the solicitation requirements, we know of no prohibition against accepting unsolicited donations from donors in such states who approach us with offers to donate.

International donations are gratefully accepted, but we cannot make any statements concerning tax treatment of donations received from outside the United States. U.S. laws alone swamp our small staff.

Please check the Project Gutenberg Web pages for current donation methods and addresses. Donations are accepted in a number of other ways including including checks, online payments and credit card donations. To donate, please visit: <https://pglaf.org/donate>

#### Section 5. General Information About Project Gutenberg-tm electronic works.

Professor Michael S. Hart was the originator of the Project Gutenberg-tm concept of a library of electronic works that could be freely shared with anyone. For thirty years, he produced and distributed Project Gutenberg-tm eBooks with only a loose network of volunteer support.

Project Gutenberg-tm eBooks are often created from several printed editions, all of which are confirmed as Public Domain in the U.S. unless a copyright notice is included. Thus, we do not necessarily keep eBooks in compliance with any particular paper edition.

Most people start at our Web site which has the main PG search facility:

<https://www.gutenberg.org>

This Web site includes information about Project Gutenberg-tm, including how to make donations to the Project Gutenberg Literary Archive Foundation, how to help produce our new eBooks, and how to

subscribe to our email newsletter to hear about new eBooks.